



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

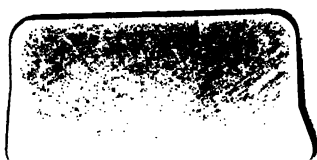
# THE HISTORY OF THE CITY OF BOSTON

FROM THE FIRST SETTLEMENT  
TO THE PRESENT TIME  
BY  
JOSEPH NEALE  
OF THE BOSTON BAR

LONDON:  
PRINTED BY J. JOHNSON, ST. PAUL'S CHURCH-YARD.  
1805.

IN TWO VOLUMES.  
VOL. I.

47. 1669.



1



## WORKS BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

---

The ACCIDENCE and PRINCIPLES of ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 12mo. 4s., cloth, cut.

The ACCIDENCE separately. 1s., cloth, cut.

BEGINNINGS of a NEW SCHOOL of METAPHYSICS; being three Essays in one thick volume. OUTLINE of SEMATOLOGY, 1831. SEQUEL to SEMATOLOGY, 1837. APPENDIX, 1839. 8vo. 12s. cloth.

"We regard this work as the most important that has ever appeared on metaphysics."—*Atlas*, Jan. 12, 1839.

"What we have quoted must convince those who are conversant with such abstruse discussions, that Mr. Smart's Essays are not only the result of long, patient, and profound study, but that, though not calculated to interest the multitude at present, they are, like all works destined to last and grow in favour, written for posterity."—*Monthly Review*, April, 1839.

The PRACTICE of ELOCUTION: a Series of Exercises for acquiring the several requisites of a good Delivery; and an outline Course of English Poetry. Fifth edition. 12mo. 5s. cloth.

SHAKSPEARIAN READINGS, illustrative of English and Roman History. (Companion volume to the foregoing.) The Scenes are continued in unbroken series, or the vacancies which the Poet left, supplied by memoranda. 12mo. pp. 476. 6s. cloth.

The THEORY of ELOCUTION, with Practical Aids for reading the Liturgy. 8vo. 7s. boards.

A NEW PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY of the ENGLISH LANGUAGE, ("SMART'S WALKER,") adapted to the present state of Literature and Science. Second edition, with Two Supplements, one to the Etymological Index, the other to the Dictionary. In one thick vol. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

The same Work Epitomized, foolscap 8vo. 7s. 6d. cloth.

## GRAMMAR ON ITS TRUE BASIS.

---

THE four Works, forming MR. SMART'S THEORETICAL and PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR, may be had separately, or variously bound together.

Separately, cloth, cut.

1. THE ACCIDENCE, 1*s*.
2. THE PRINCIPLES, 3*s*. 6*d*.
3. THE MANUAL, 2*s*. 6*d*.
4. THE KEY, 1*s*.

Variously bound together, cloth, cut.

5. ACCIDENCE and PRINCIPLES, 4*s*.
6. MANUAL and KEY, 3*s*.
7. ACCIDENCE and MANUAL, 3*s*.
8. ACCIDENCE, PRINCIPLES, and MANUAL, 6*s*. 6*d*.

Also in two vols. 7*s*. cloth, 8*s*. roan.

9. { Vol. 1. ACCIDENCE, MANUAL, and KEY  
    { Vol. 2. PRINCIPLES.

GRAMMAR ON ITS TRUE BASIS.

---

A

# MANUAL OF GRAMMAR,

CONTAINING

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS;  
EXERCISES IN ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY,  
SYNTAX, PROSODY;

AND

**A COPIOUS ALPHABETICAL INDEX:**

AUXILIARY TO THE ACCIDENCE AND PRINCIPLES OF  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

By B. H. SMART.



LONDON:

LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS.  
1847.



LONDON : Printed by WILLIAM CLOWES and SONS, Stamford Street.

## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

A GREAT number of the examples for correction, included in the following MANUAL under the heads of Syntax and Punctuation, will be already familiar to the experienced teacher. The materials elsewhere are original ; but at the places referred to, I have mostly preferred old examples to such as I might have contrived or selected, because I hoped to show that materials already found practically useful, will be still more effective when placed for correction on what I deem to be *the true basis of grammar*. As to that basis, I must refer the inquirer to the theoretical investigations contained in the “ Principles of English Grammar ;” and to the same principles still more widely traced in the “ Beginnings of a New School of Metaphysics.” I have to add, that a MANUAL OF RHETORIC, nearly ready for the press, and a MANUAL OF LOGIC, already in a state of forwardness, are intended to follow the MANUAL OF GRAMMAR.—See “ Conclusion” to the Manual at page 191, immediately before the Key.



# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
Examination Questions; with additional Questions and corresponding Answers . . . . .	1
Exercises in Etymological Parsing . . . . .	18
 <b>EXERCISES FOR WRITING :</b>	
An Exercise (to be divided at the discretion of the teacher into several) for learning the use of capitals . . . . .	29
Exercises in Orthography and Etymology . . . . .	31
Exercises in Etymology continued . . . . .	44
Exercises in Syntactical Parsing :	
Note preliminary . . . . .	55
Exercises . . . . .	56
 <b>EXERCISES FOR WRITING CONTINUED :</b>	
Exercises in Syntax :	
Concord . . . . .	58
Government . . . . .	59
Concord continued . . . . .	59
Government continued . . . . .	81
Concord and Correspondence among the parts of a Sentence	85
Specimens of Sentences not Grammatically, but Logically or Rhetorically defective :	
Logically defective . . . . .	92
Rhetorically defective . . . . .	94
Exercises in Syntax promiscuously disposed . . . . .	96
Grammatical Analysis (or Parsing) on the true Principles of Language . . . . .	101
 <b>EXERCISES FOR WRITING CONTINUED :</b>	
Transposition . . . . .	122
Punctuation :	
Grammatical Punctuation . . . . .	124
Rhetorical Punctuation . . . . .	139
Promiscuous Examples for exercise in Punctuation . . . . .	141
 <b>PROSODY :</b>	
Exercises in Scanning . . . . .	145
Alphabetical Index to the Accidence, the Principles, and Manual . . . . .	151



# A MANUAL OF GRAMMAR.

---

## EXAMINATION QUESTIONS:

WITH ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS\* AND CORRESPONDENT  
ANSWERS.

---

### ACCIDENCE, page iii.

WITHOUT requiring a definition of grammar, for which we must await the higher views proposed in the Principles, let me ask you, what does English grammar teach?

What are the arts which grow out of the use of language?

*Ans.* Grammar, Logic, and Rhetoric. Grammar puts words together so that they form CONSTRUCTION; Logic, so that they form SENSE; Rhetoric, so that they imply EMOTION.

What are the original parts of speech?

Why is the verb the chief part of speech?

If a verb is not a speech by itself, why is it the chief part in constructing the speech or sentence?

*Ans.* Because immediately or mediately it absorbs every other part, and indicates that the one expression with one meaning which arises out of this absorption is complete. The whole sentence is then the word, that is, the verb.

What sort of noun or name is the word *John*, or *Mary*, or *London*, or *Thames*?

What sort of noun is the word *man*, or *horse*, or *tree*, or *river*?

### Page iv.

What sort of noun is the word *greatness*, or *amability*, or *merriment*?

Tell me why the word called a Pronoun is so named?

What is it in reality?

What are the chief pronouns?

\* These, except occasionally at the discretion of the teacher, are not meant for the younger pupils.

What grammatical points shall we be enabled to understand by means of the pronouns?

In discourse, who is the first person, and what is the correspondent pronoun?

Page v.

Who is the second person, and what is the correspondent pronoun?

Who or what is the third person, and what are the correspondent pronouns?

When is a noun said to be in the singular number?

When is it said to be in the plural number?

How do we commonly make a noun plural?

How do we form the plural of such words as *box, church, kiss, potato*?

How do we form the plural of such a word as *fly*?

How do we form the plural of *loaf, life*, and some other similar words?

What is the plural of *man*? of *foot*? of *goose*? of *mouse*?

What is the plural of *I*? of *thou*? of *he, she, it*?

What is the plural of *axis*? of *datum*? of *radius*? of *cherub*?

When in doubt concerning the plural form of a word, where must we look in the Accidence for information?

*Ans.* To the Appendix, page xli. and xlii., in which we find all the irregular plurals not elsewhere noted.

What does masculine gender mean? What does feminine gender? What does neuter gender?

What personal pronoun answers to a noun masculine? What personal pronoun answers to a noun feminine? What

Page vi.

personal pronoun answers to a noun neuter?

What words are said to be of the common gender?

What does Case mean?

*Ans.* It means the place and office which a noun falls\* into, when helping to make construction.

\* Principles (II., 203), p. 114. *Case* is originally a Latin word, from the verb *cado, cadere, casum*, to fall.

How many are the cases into which an English noun can fall, comprehending the pronoun as being a sort of noun?

What is, to decline a noun?

Page vii.

Decline the personal pronouns, *I, thou, he, she*, and *it*.

What is *who* called? What are its person and number? Decline it.

How do nouns, not being pronouns, form their possessive?

Have nouns, not being pronouns, a form for the objective?

Does a noun, in requiring an apostrophe for the possessive, always take an *s* after the apostrophe?

With regard to most nouns, not being pronouns, is there any difference to the ear between the possessive singular, the nominative plural, and the possessive plural?

As for the difference to the eye, (let us take the noun *boy* for instance,) how do you write the possessive singular? how the nominative plural? how the possessive plural?

Decline the proper name *George*:—the proper name *Moses*:—the noun common *mother*:—the noun common

Page viii.

*fox*:—the noun common *fly*:—the noun common *child*:—the noun abstract *pride*:—the noun abstract *righteousness*.

Returning now from the noun to the verb, which, you have properly said, is the principal part of speech because it is sometimes a speech by itself, can you explain, a little more in detail, the reason you gave me for considering it the principal part of speech, when it is not the speech itself.

*Ans.* The reason I gave amounted to this, that if not the speech itself, the verb is the element in construction which collects to itself all the other parts, so that they are all one speech,—the one expression with one meaning,—the verb or word which was wanted for the occasion.

Exemplify this remark.

*Ans.* *May* is a verb, but with a sense so general and vague, that it cannot by itself be a speech. We add *be* to it, and then *may be* is the verb. We add *taught*, and then *may be taught* is the verb. We add *by experience*, an expression formed of a preposition and its noun-objective; but this expression, when added to the verb, only serves, like the others, to fix its meaning; so that, as one expression with one meaning, the construction thus far carried on is still a verb, namely



*may be taught by experience.* We add another expression to this, namely, *to be careful*, and then the verb is, *may be taught by experience to be careful.* But this verb is, as yet, without a nominative; let us place a nominative, say *man*, or, more particularly, *a man*, or, still more particularly, *a thoughtless man*: this nominative being put to the verb, so as to lose its separate meaning, becomes, as every previous part of the speech had become, an element of the verb; and the whole or complete verb is now as follows: "A thoughtless man *may be taught by experience to be careful*;" of which completed verb, *may* was the primary element, and is now the chief part of the whole construction,—the keystone of the completed arch or period,—the element of the one expression with one meaning, which makes it a verb, that is, a word suited to the special occasion which calls it forth.

When is a verb said to be dividual?

What is a verb called when it is incapable of division?

When, in a dividual verb, we take the parts separately, as, for instance, when we say "He *may be reading*;" which of the parts is the real verb?

#### Page ix.

What must that part or those parts of a dividual verb be, which cannot be called the real verb?

How many individual participles can an English verb have?

What are the different names which have been given to the participle in *ing*? Which is the best name to be always used?

What are the different names which have been given to the other participle? Which is the best name to be always used?

When is a verb said to be active?

What verbs are capable of the passive voice?

What is the method, in our language, of forming the passive voice?

What sort of verb cannot be made passive? What is a verb called that cannot be made passive?

What is that form of a verb called which denotes past time?

How are the preterit tense and the perfect participle of a verb commonly formed?

When the preterit tense, or the perfect participle of a verb, or both, are otherwise formed than as you have described, what is the verb deemed to be?

Verbs irregular seem to be so, in different ways and degrees; and some appear to be irregular in pronunciation only. Can you give an instance of the latter?\*

Is *spell* a verb regular?

Page x.

Is *dwell* quite regular?

Is *lay* irregular, if we judge only by the ear? What makes it irregular in spelling?

What cause has made *feed* irregular?

What circumstance of greater irregularity is there in *weep* as compared with the verb last mentioned?

Give an instance of verbs irregular that change only the last consonant for the preterit and participle.

Give an instance of verbs irregular that keep the same form throughout.

Give an instance of verbs that are irregular only in the participle.

Give an instance of verbs that are irregular only in the preterit.

Give an instance of verbs irregular that have the same change of form both for the preterit and participle.

Give instances of verbs irregular that have distinct forms for the root, the preterit, and the participle.

Your instances are general: some individual verbs may occasion difficulty or doubt. Where, when at a loss, do you seek for assistance in your *Accidence*?

*Ans.* At the Table of irregular verbs in the Appendix, No. 3, page xliv.

Among the irregular verbs there laid down, it appears that some require to be very carefully compared with each other. Give me an instance of your power to make such comparison.

*Ans.* There are three verbs whose present, preterit, and participial forms are liable to be confounded and misused, namely the verb active irregular *lay*, meaning to put or place; the verb neuter irregular *lie*, meaning to rest or recline horizontally; and the verb neuter regular *lie*, meaning to tell a falsehood. By properly comparing these verbs in their several forms, we shall avoid such faults of speech as the following: "I am going to lay down on the sofa." "Lie that book on the table." "She laid down to sleep at ten o'clock." "It has laid on

\* Questions which, in the *Accidence*, have their answers in the smaller type, are not meant for the younger pupils, except where the discretion of the teacher may direct otherwise.

hand since November." "He would have lain down his arms, if required."

Is there not some general principle running through the irregular verbs in forming the preterit and participle?

*Ans.* There is a tendency to contract any long vowel which may occur in the root; as *bite, bit, bit*; *chide, chid, chid*. Sometimes the contraction is in the pronunciation only; as *read, réad, réad*.

Are we to apply this principle universally?

*Ans.* No; we can apply it with credit to our pronunciation only so far as custom has carried it. Thus, for instance, however great may be the tendency to say, "He *béat* me yesterday, as he *béats* you to-day;" yet we must, according to courtly custom, say "He *béat* me yesterday." On the other hand, it is foolish to resist the tendency in question when good custom favours it; as, for instance, to insist on saying *hear, heard, heard*, when, with the world at large, it is *hear, heard, heard*.

What is a verb principal?

How may we know which are verbs principal?

What are the real auxiliary verbs of modern English?

Which of these are liable to be verbs principal also?

When you call a verb *principal*, do you mean that it is the chief word in the construction?

*Ans.* Certainly not. It may indeed be the chief part of speech in the construction, but this can be only when it does not depute its proper office to an auxiliary verb: when it does so, the auxiliary is the chief word in the construction, and the principal verb is so called only with reference to its being the root that yields the conjugated form. In other terms, the auxiliary is the chief word in a grammatical point of view, while, if we call the other verb chief or principal, it is as a logical element, that is, with a view to its meaning. As to this point, namely, its meaning, mere construction or grammar has no concern with it.

What is the mood of a verb?

What are the tenses of a verb?

What is done when we conjugate a verb?

Before we proceed to the conjugation of a verb principal, what must we learn?

What mood is *may, might*, the sign of? Conjugate it in its two forms.

Page xi.

What mood is *shall* sometimes the sign of? Conjugate it.

What mood is *shall*, and its other form *should*, at other times the sign of? Conjugate it in its two forms.

What mood is *will* sometimes the sign of? Conjugate it.

What mood is *will*, and its other form *would*, at other times the sign of? Conjugate it in its two forms, with one form under two names, if necessary.

Page xii.

What mood is *can*, *could*, the sign of? Conjugate it in its two forms, with one form under two names.

Is this correct thus to assign *would* and *could* both to preterit and to present time?

*Ans.* Yes; for when I say, "He *would* do it if he *could*," both of them have reference to present time; but when I say, "He *could* do it, though he *would* not," both have reference to past time.

Why do you not assign *might* and *should* also to the preterit as well as the present?

*Ans.* Because in modern English they hardly ever suggest a past meaning, unless by collocation with another helping verb.

What mood is *must* the sign of? Conjugate it.

What is the tense of the verb *ought* in modern English? Is it included among the auxiliary verbs?

What mood is the auxiliary *do*, *did*, sometimes the sign of? What mood is it the sign of in saying "Do," or "Do thou?"

Page xiii.

What mood is it at other times the sign of?

Conjugate *do*, *did*, to its full extent as an auxiliary verb.

In conjugating the subjunctive mood, you call one of the tenses, *present-future*, and the other, *preterit-present*: what is the reason for so calling them?

Conjugate *to have*, to its full extent as an auxiliary verb.

I observe that the form *had* occurs both as the preterit of the indicative, and the conditional present individual of the potential: justify this by examples.

*Ans.* In saying, "She *had* dismissed him before you came," the auxiliary *had*, which, with the participle *dismissed*, forms a preterpluperfect tense, is evidently a preterit before its union with the participle. But in saying, "She *had* dismissed him, if you had not come," the same auxiliary is as evidently a conditional present before its union with the participle, equivalent to *would have*. By adding the participle, a past tense is indeed formed. But as to the auxiliary itself, it has the difference in the two expressions, which are pointed out by its twofold distribution in conjugating the auxiliary verb, of which it is a part.

Do you mean to say, then, that what you call a preterit or a present tense, may require another name when another part is added?

*Ans.* Assuredly; for the use of an auxiliary verb is to form those tenses of a verb principal which it cannot form for itself by variations of its individual root. Thus, therefore, though *she had* or *she would have* may have a present meaning, yet *she had dismissed*, or *she would have dismissed*, has a past meaning. Again, though *I had* may have a simple preterit meaning, *I had spoken* has the meaning called preterpluperfect: and though *I shall have* is simply a tense future, *I shall have finished* is the tense called future-perfect. And again, though *I may have* is the present of the potential mood, *I may have taken* is a past tense of that mood, having the title of preterperfect.

Page xiv.

When is *to let* deemed an auxiliary verb?

When is *to be* deemed an auxiliary verb?

Conjugate the verb *to be* in the indicative mood present tense. Conjugate it in the tenses which imply past time

Page xv.

in the same mood. Conjugate it in the tenses which imply time to come in the same mood.

Conjugate the same verb in the imperative mood.

Conjugate the same verb in the potential mood present tense. Conjugate it in two of the tenses which imply past time in the same mood.

Page xvi.

Conjugate it in the conditional present tense individual in the same mood:—in the conditional present tense not individual:—in the conditional past tense simply individual:—in the conditional past tense not simply individual.

Conjugate the same verb in the two tenses of the subjunctive mood.

What is the infinitive form of the same verb in the present tense?—in the preterperfect tense?

What is the imperfect participle of the same verb?—the perfect participle?—the preterperfect participle?

Page xvii.

Conjugate the verb *to take* in the three tenses of the indicative mood which imply present time.

Conjugate the same verb in the five tenses of the same mood which imply time past.

Conjugate the same verb in the two tenses of the same mood which imply time to come.

## Page xviii.

Conjugate the same verb in the two forms of the imperative mood.

Conjugate the same verb in the present tense potential mood :—Conjugate it in the preterperfect tense.

Conjugate the same verb in the conditional present :—in

## Page xix.

the conditional past simply dividual :—in the conditional past not simply dividual.

Conjugate the same verb in the five forms of the subjunctive mood.

What is the infinitive form of the same verb in the present tense?—in the preterperfect tense?

What are the participles of the same verb?

Now go back to page xiv., and, in order to conjugate the verb *to take* in the passive voice, add its perfect participle to every form of that verb; first, in the Indicative mood: what in this mood is the passive voice of *to take* in the present tense?—in the preterit tense?—in the preterperfect tense?—in the preterpluperfect tense?—in the future tense?—in the future perfect tense?

What, in the Imperative mood, is the first form of *to take* in the passive voice?—what is its second form?

What, in the Potential mood, is the present tense of *to take* in the passive voice?—what is the preterit tense?—what is the preterperfect tense?—what is the conditional present tense of which the auxiliary is individual?—what is the conditional present tense of which the auxiliary is not individual?—what is the conditional past tense of which the auxiliary is simply dividual?—what is the conditional past tense of which the auxiliary is not simply dividual?

What, in the Subjunctive mood, are the two tenses of *to take* in the passive voice?

What are the two tenses of *to take* in the Infinitive mood of the passive voice?

What is the present participle of *to take* in the passive voice?—what is the perfect participle?—what is the preterperfect participle?

## Page xx.

You have said that the verb is the chief part of speech, and that the noun, including the pronoun which is a sort of noun, is the next in rank. We come now to parts of speech which are derived from, and subservient to these two. What, let me ask you, is an adjective, or, as it is sometimes called, a noun-adjective?

What are the articles?

What is an adverb?

## Page xxi.

What is a preposition?

What is a conjunction?

What is an interjection, when properly viewed?

Repeat the names of all the parts of speech.

*Ans.* The verb; the noun and pronoun; the adverb, the adjective, and the articles; the preposition; the conjunction; and the interjection.

Do the parts of speech really amount to so many as these?

*Ans.* No; for the interjection, as I have said, is not a part of speech at all: the pronoun is but a sort of noun; and the articles are adjectives. Hence, there are in reality only six parts of speech, the verb, and its attendant part, the adverb; the noun-substantive, and its attendant noun-adjective; the preposition; and the conjunction.

## Page xxii.

What were given in a former page as the possessive cases of the personal pronouns?

What must we call these while learning grammar? Why must we so call them?

When the possessive pronouns are used adjectively, what must we call them?

## Page xxiii.

Which of them does not alter its form on becoming an adjective pronoun?

What two words must be added to the seven already alluded to? Repeat the whole nine.

What do you call the pronouns which are formed by adding *self*, or *selves*, to *my*, *thy*, *him* (for *his*), *her*, *it* (for *its*), *our*, *your*, and *them* (for *their*)?

What are *who* and *which* called? What is their different use in modern English?

What do you say of *who* or *which* when used as the leading word of an interrogative sentence?

What do you say of *which* when used as in this sentence; "He has dismissed his servant, *which* is the fourth he has sent away this month"?

In what respect does a relative pronoun differ from other pronouns?

What two words, commonly mere conjunctions, are liable to become relative pronouns in construction? For

Page xxiv.

what word or words may *that* be used? When is *as* used for a relative pronoun? Give examples. How do you describe *that* or *as*, when used as your examples show?

Does not the word *that* sometimes, as a pronoun, come under another denomination?

What is the plural of the demonstrative *that*?

What is the plural of the demonstrative *this*?

When must we call *this* and *that* demonstrative adjectives? When must we call them demonstrative pronouns?

How may we know, merely by a difference of sound, when *that* is a demonstrative, and when it is a conjunction or a relative?

Can you not exemplify the use of *that* in its four conditions of mere conjunction, demonstrative pronoun, relative pronoun, and demonstrative adjective?

How can we discover when *that* is a mere conjunction, and when it is a conjunction and something more, namely, a relative pronoun?

What do you call such words as *what*, *whatever*, *whoever*, *whichever*, and so forth? How do you speak of any such word when used in construction thus: "I know *what* sort of person he is"? How do you speak of any such word when used in construction thus: "*What* are you doing"?

Page xxv.

What are we to call *each*, *every*, *either*, when they include in their meaning the person or thing intended? What must we call them when employed thus: *each boy*,



*every man, either way, neither plan?* What do you call the compounded expressions *every-one*, and *many-a-one*?

What do you call *some one, none, any*, and so forth, when they include in their meaning the person or persons, thing or things intended? What do you call them when employed thus: *some hope, one horse, any flowers*, and so forth? What do you call the compounded expression, *no one*? What do you call the compounded expressions *oneself, each other, one another*?

What, in order, are the several kinds of pronouns?

Where do you find a list of all the pronouns?

*Ans.* At pages 1, li, No. 4 in the Appendix.

### Page xxvi.

Let us now reconsider some of the other parts of speech. —What is the difference between an adjective and an adverb?

Give me instances of words that can be used either as adjectives or as adverbs.

Give instances of words that can be used either as substantives or adjectives.

Give instances of words, which, though always deemed substantives in their separate state, can nevertheless stand as adjectives in construction.

What is the test of an adjective? Give instances of words commonly deemed adjectives, that will not agree with substantives except by means of a verb neuter. What will these words be best deemed?

To how many degrees of comparison are adjectives and

### Page xxvii.

adverbs liable? What are these degrees called?

When these degrees are expressed by changes of the same individual word, what is the general rule for forming the changes?

Give some instances of changes for the comparative and superlative degrees, which are not formed by changing the positive form?

Give examples of words which cannot, logically, take any form for a comparative and superlative degree.

How many articles, so called, are there in English gram-

mar? By what epithets are they distinguished? When is *an* used instead of *a*? When is *an* used before *h* not mute? Why do we say *a unit, a ewer, many a one*, and not *an unit, an ewer, many an one*?

Page xxviii.

In what respect are prepositions and conjunctions alike? Distinguish, in other respects, prepositions from conjunctions?

Give examples to prove that the same word may be sometimes a preposition, sometimes a conjunction.

When may a word used in construction be called a mongrel part of speech? Give instances.

Page xxix.

When we have learned to know the parts of speech,\* what is the next thing we must learn? What is that part of grammar called, which teaches how words are put together?

In how many ways does a noun or pronoun nominative enter into construction? What is the first way? What is the second way? What is the third way? What is the fourth way?

Page xxx.

What is the fifth way?

In how many ways does a noun or pronoun possessive enter into construction? What is the first way? When the former noun is a pronoun, as *my, thy, &c.*, how is it usual to explain its connection with the other noun?

What is the second way in which a noun possessive enters into construction?

In how many ways does a noun objective enter into construction? What is the first way? What is the second? What is the third?

\* The truth however is, that we cannot completely learn the parts of speech till we learn Syntax, or the principle of their union. For a word is not this or that part of speech from anything belonging to itself individually, but from the office it may have to take, in constructing the whole expression into which it enters.

In what way must a verb, when it quits its state of infinitive or participle, enter into construction ?

You said, formerly, that a verb can be a speech by itself ; as " Go ; " " Come ; " " Listen . " In these instances *thou* or *you* is included in the meaning, and the verb does not enter into construction at all, so as to be a part of speech : it is, as you said, the whole speech. Now suppose we join an adverb, which shall make one sense with the verb, as, " Go away ; " " Come quickly ; " " Listen attentively ; "—will not the adverb form complete construction with the verb ?

*Ans.* Certainly ; and the construction so formed is now a new verb imperative, a complete speech, as was the single word before the addition was made.

It appears then that a real verb can enter into construction with an adverb, independently of a nominative.

*Ans.* No : not independently of a nominative understood, or included in its meaning. Every verb, by its nature as a verb, includes a nominative : the verb *listens*, it is true, does not yet include its nominative, but then it is not yet the complete verb or speech. Let us say " John listens," and the verb will be complete: The two words being joined are now one expression with one meaning, and are properly deemed the complete verb. It may be said of the grammatical verb, that, in completing the sentence or logical verb, it absorbs every other part of speech.

Do you mean that it absorbs every other part of speech indifferently and immediately ?

*Ans.* No : it *immediately* absorbs only the parts of speech which are fitted to make construction with it ; as the noun nominative, the noun objective, and the adverb. A verb does not immediately absorb an adjective, unless it be a verb neuter. In saying *is attentive*, the expression formed by the verb and the adjective is a logical verb neuter ; and the verb has absorbed the adjective. But, in general, the adjective, before being absorbed by the verb, has been absorbed by a substantive. In saying, *a very good boy*, the logical noun *very good boy* has absorbed the article *a* : again, the substantive *boy* had absorbed the logical adjective *very good* : and again the adjective *good* had absorbed the adverb *very*. The whole expression is now fitted to be joined to a verb, as a nominative or objective, and so to be absorbed by it. Thus, mediately or immediately, the verb absorbs every other part of speech.

Is a preposition absorbed immediately by the verb ?

*Ans.* No : the clause formed by a preposition and its objective, is, as one whole expression, either a logical adverb, or a logical adjective. If the former, the clause as a whole, and not the preposition singly, is absorbed by the verb :—if the latter, the clause must be absorbed by the substantive, before the whole can be absorbed by the verb.

Is a conjunction immediately absorbed by the verb ?

Yes ; if by verb you mean the whole sentence before which the conjunction stands : but the effect is, that the sentence thus losing its independent character, becomes the adverb of some other sentence :

for of two sentences so joined, if one is the verb, the other is the adverb: but again, of these two sentences, one absorbs the other, and the logical verb is complete; that is to say, the period is quite rounded.

Page xxxi.

In how many ways does a verb infinitive enter into construction? What is the first way? What is the second? What is the third? What is the fourth?

When a participle imperfect is not a pure adjective in the construction, in how many ways does it otherwise enter into construction? What is the first way? What is the second?

Page xxxii.

What is the third?

When a participle perfect is not a pure adjective in the construction, in how many ways does it otherwise enter into construction? What is the first way? What is the second?

In how many ways does an adjective enter into construction? What is the first way? What is the second? What is the third? What is the fourth?

Page xxxiii.

As to the conditions under which a pronoun enters into construction, are they peculiar to the pronoun, or common to noun and pronoun?

What must we carefully remember in order not to mistake the grammatical position of a pronoun?

Explain the grammatical relations of the noun and its pronoun in the following constructions: first, "I saw *George*, and *he* told me:" secondly, "*George* came, and I told *him*:" thirdly, "I saw *George* and told *him*:" fourthly, "I saw *George who* told me:" fifthly, "*George* came, *whom* I told:" sixthly, "I saw *George whom* I told."

What is the case of the relative in saying "The bird is dead *which* sung sweetly?" What is the case in saying, "The bird is dead *which* you loved."

Page xxxiv.

How does an adverb enter into construction?

How does a preposition enter into construction?

How does a conjunction enter into construction?

How may an interjection occur in a sentence? How do you explain, grammatically, such an expression as, "Ah me!"

---

What is meant by the term logical?

*Ans.* Rational; but the term bears, at the same time, a reference to the word or words by which rational knowledge is acquired, or developed.

Is not an exclamation, or, as grammarians call it, an interjection, rational?

*Ans.* Not by itself. It expresses an emotion, consequent indeed upon something understood; but it does not logically develop what is understood, that is, it does not develop it by rational signs.

Is not every other part of speech a logical sign?

*Ans.* Not as a *part* of speech, but as an independent sign. In this last capacity, every word is a means of reaching further knowledge, or of developing knowledge already attained. But the moment a word becomes a *part* of speech, it ceases to have an independent meaning: along with the word or words joined to it, it then forms one expression with one resulting meaning, distinct from the independent meaning which it previously denoted. Thus, for instance, the word *no* has an independent meaning, and the word *thing* has an independent meaning: but the moment the words are joined, their independent meanings are lost in that of the word *nothing*, which they form, and which expresses the one meaning resulting from those two previous meanings.

Page xxxiv.—*continued.*

What is a logical part of speech? Give examples of logical, that is, of constructed nouns.

Page xxxv.

What twofold distinction have you to notice with respect to a logical part of speech?

When may a logical part of speech be called *dividual*?

What are the two chief grammatical elements, namely, the mere grammatical nominative, and the mere grammatical verb, which can be detached from the two logical parts that make up the whole of the following sentence: "He who preserves me, to whom I owe my being, whose I am, and whom I serve,—is eternal"?

How many clausular sentences come between the two mere grammatical parts of speech you have thus detached? Explain the construction of each clausular sentence. State in what way each clausular sentence becomes a part of the logical nominative.

What is a logical part of speech individual?

What is the criterion of a logical part of speech individual?

Page xxxvi.

Give examples of logical parts of speech individual.

Page xxxvii.

What may we call such phrases, as *at all*, *to be sure*, *at present*, *in general*, *hand to hand*, *at once*, &c.? How have they arisen?

What is it that establishes a licence, or infringement of a rule, in grammar?

How do you explain such licensed phrases as *A few men? A thousand years? It is a fathom deep? He is six feet high? From hence? From thence? From whence?*

Page xxxviii.

How do you explain the grammatical inaccuracy, warranted by custom, which occurs in saying, "He is taught music"?

How do you explain the grammatical inaccuracy, warranted by custom, which occurs in saying, "These flowers must be taken care of"?\*

How do you explain such a construction as the following: "The longer I stay, the happier I am"?†

How do you explain grammatically the phrase *a month ago*, in saying, "It happened a month ago"?

How do you resolve the difficulty which at first appears in such a sentence as the following: "There were more culprits than he"?

\* A further explanation than the Accidence affords, may be here given. *To take care of* has become, by custom, a logical verb active. But an active verb may always be made passive; and the passive of this logical verb active, is, *To be taken care of*.

† "I am happier, in proportion to the longer time I stay:" the former part of this sentence is a logical verb, the latter is its logical adverb. Of the sentence whose construction it proposes to explain, one of the parts must be called an adverb, the other the verb, which makes sense and construction with it.

## Page xxxviii.

Is there any grammatical inaccuracy in saying, "She was to blame:" "A house to let"?

\* \* In examining pupils who advance from the *Accidence* to the *Principles of Grammar*, the *Synopsis* is to be used, which commences at page 267 of the *Principles*; the several heads to be turned into the form of questions, as there indicated.

## EXERCISES IN ETYMOLOGICAL PARSING.\*

*Noun-nominative and Verb.*

## MODEL EXAMPLES.

John laughs.

John: noun (proper†); masculine; third person; singular; nominative: thus declined, &c., see *Accidence*, pages vii. viii.  
Laughs: verb regular (laugh, laughed, laughed); indicative; present; third person; singular: thus conjugated in the present and preterit tenses,

PRESENT. I laugh, thou laughest, he laughs; We laugh, &c.

PRETERIT. I laughed, thou laughedst, he laughed, &c.

## EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Morning dawns. People wake. Breakfast comes.  
Workmen labour. Labour profits. Henry studies. Studies tire. Boys play. Play delights. Delight decreases.

\* Exercises are here furnished under the distinction assigned, in order not to travel out of the beaten course in teaching grammar; but the distinction is grounded on essentially wrong notions of the nature of the parts of speech, and must, in this place, be protested against. There is nothing in the *meaning* of any word that makes it this part of speech or another: it owes its denomination, in this respect, entirely to the office it fulfils in helping to make up the whole construction. How, then, can the learner properly know what each word is, individually, if he does not understand, at the same time, the whole construction of the sentence, or the part of a sentence, which it helps to form,—in other words, the *syntax*? Accordingly, the heads of the several exercises that follow, describe respectively the construction which the parts will form. Parsing exercises will be furnished in another part of this Manual, more accurately adapted to the true principles of language.

† The distinction, *proper*, *common*, or *abstract*, may be noticed occasionally, but as it belongs to logic, not grammar, it needs not be insisted on.

Night advances. Folk (or Folks) sleep. Sleep refreshes. Life proceeds. Mortals hope. Hope endures. Life ends. God is.

Adam lived. Men multiplied. Kingdoms arose. Empires flourished. Babylon fell. Events proceeded. Poets sang. Orators harangued. Sages taught. Religion invited. Men refused. Divisions followed. God ruled.

☞ *Form some further examples of like parts.*

*Infinitive of verb active, with noun-objective governed by it.*

MODEL EXAMPLE.

To love plums.

To love: verb active in the infinitive; PARTICIPLE IMPERFECT, loving; PARTICIPLE PERFECT, loved.

Plums: noun (common); neuter; third person; plural; objective: thus declined, &c.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

To have money. To know George. To gather roses. To say grace. To use severity. To promote friendship. To mind advice. To give ear. To smell flowers. To hate dishonesty. To gain love. To follow fortune. To take warning. To do nothing. To seek peace. To forgive faults. To dispense justice. To love God.

☞ *Form further examples.*

*Noun-substantive with adjective, adverb, and article.*

MODEL EXAMPLE.

A very good boy.

Boy: noun (common); masculine; singular: thus declined, &c. *Accidence, vii., viii.*

Good: adjective, having irregular degrees of comparison, POSITIVE *good*, COMPARATIVE *better*, SUPERLATIVE *best*.\*

Very: adverb.

A: article indefinite.

\* If the adjective is incapable of degrees at all, or if capable of them only by prefixing *more* and *most*, the pupil must say, "Not capable of grammatical variation."



## EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

The much beloved friend. An idly written letter. A more generous patron. A truly pious mind. The much better way. An exceedingly interesting sight. The very best place. A much wiser plan. A quite altered person. An ill looking fellow. The most learned student. A brightly shining sun. The tranquilly pleasant evening. The most fatherly kindness. A very motherly affection. A not unfaithful likeness. A most happy event. A happily conceived project. A capitally constructed work. A really beneficial offer. A completely formed road.

☞ *Form further examples.*

---

*Infinitive of verb active, with noun-objective governed by it, and adverb.*

## MODEL EXAMPLE.

To violate friendship disgracefully.

To violate: verb active in the infinitive: PARTICIPLE IMPERFECT, violating; PART. PERF. &c.

Friendship: noun (abstract); neuter; third person; singular; objective: thus declined. &c.

Disgracefully: adverb, not capable of grammatical variation.

## EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

To use creatures cruelly. To spend money lavishly. To quit London soon. To write letters well. To distribute justice impartially. To leave bed early. To take breakfast betimes. To examine opinions carefully. To pay debts honestly. To commit faults often. To love parents much. To give warning thrice. To leave home now. To meet friends then. To read Scripture frequently. To end disputes to-morrow. To pass time away. To spend evenings abroad. To cast accounts up. To throw things about. To spin time out. To expect blessings above. To fear torments below. To carry undertakings through.

☞ *Form further examples.*

---

*Pronoun nominative; and verb active, with pronoun objective governed by it.*

MODEL EXAMPLES.

I saw thee.

I: personal pronoun; first person; singular; nominative.

Saw: verb irregular (see, saw, seen); active; indicative; preterit; first person; singular.

Thee: personal pronoun; second person; singular; objective.

Mine excels thine.

Mine: personal pronoun possessive; third person; singular\* used as a nominative.

Excels: verb regular; active; indicative; present; third person; singular.

Thine: personal pronoun possessive; third person; singular or plural; used as an objective.

Thyself deceivedst us.

Thyself: personal pronoun reciprocal; second person; singular; nominative.

Deceivedst: verb regular; active; indicative; preterit; second person; singular.

Us: personal pronoun, first person; plural; objective.

Who seeks you?

Who: relative pronoun used interrogatively; third person; singular; nominative.

Seeks: verb irregular (seek, sought, sought); active; indicative; present; third person; singular.

You: personal pronoun; second person; plural; objective.

Whom seek ye?

Whom: relative pronoun used interrogatively; third person; singular or plural; objective.

Seek: verb, &c. second person; plural.

Ye: personal pronoun, second person; plural; nominative.

This equals that.

This: pronoun demonstrative; third person; singular; nominative.

Equals: verb regular; active; indicative; present; third person; singular.

That: pronoun demonstrative; third person; singular; objective.

\* That it is singular is known by the verb: if it were plural, the sentence would be "Mine *excel* thine."

Each resembles another.

Each : pronoun distributive ; third person ; singular ; nominative.

Resembles : verb regular ; active ; indicative ; present ; third person ; singular.

Another : pronoun indefinite, third person ; singular ; objective.

One favours oneself.

One : pronoun indefinite ; third person ; singular ; nominative.

Favours : verb regular, active ; indicative ; present ; third person ; singular.

Oneself : indefinite pronoun reciprocal ; third person ; singular ; objective.

### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

She shunned both. He hates himself. Who esteems him? Whom insultedst thou? Neither satisfied me. Hers surpassed theirs. They esteemed one-another. All dislike that. What causes this? What sayest thou? Myself deceived thee. Thou deceivedst thyself. Which becomes me? Which chooses he? These satisfy no-one. What knew they? What gave he? Which attracts them? Which prefer they? This outvalues either. Some mind others. Many lamed themselves. They respect each-other. Ours displeases all.

☞ *Form further examples.*

---

*Noun-substantive, with noun in the possessive case governed by it, and adjective pronoun possessive.*

### MODEL EXAMPLE.

Her father's house.

House : noun (common) ; neuter ; singular : thus declined, &c.

Father's : noun (common) ; masculine ; singular ; in the possessive case : thus declined, &c.

Her : adjective pronoun possessive ; feminine gender.\*

### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

His brother's hat. My† sister's bonnet. My sisters'

\* The person and number, as to this class of pronouns, are quite unimportant to grammar, and therefore need not be noticed. The gender may be noticed, because in our language, this is determined by the noun which the pronoun stands for, and not by the noun it is placed with.

† Common gender.

school. Its body's length. Our nation's greatness. Her aunt's abode. Your workman's diligence. Your workmen's diligence. Our playmate's fun. Our playmates' fun. Their ancestor's possessions. Their ancestors' possessions. Whose body's strength. Whose mind's capacity. Thy heart's coldness. His foot's length. My grandfather's fields. My grandfathers' fields.

☞ *Form further examples.*

---

*Noun-nominative on one side, with adjective demonstrative, or relative pronoun used demonstratively;—and on the other side, with verb neuter and adverb.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

That man arrived early.

Man: noun-substantive; masculine; third person; singular; nominative: thus declined, &c.

That: adjective demonstrative.

Arrived: verb regular; neuter; indicative; preterit; third person; singular.

Early: adverb.

What flower grows here?

Flower: noun-substantive; neuter; third person; singular; nominative.

What: relative pronoun indefinite; used interrogatively and demonstratively.

Grows: verb irregular (grow, grew, grown); neuter; indicative; present; third person; singular.

Here: adverb.

Which boy ran fastest?

Boy: noun-substantive; masculine; third person; singular; nominative.

Which: relative pronoun used interrogatively and demonstratively.

Ran: verb irregular, (run, ran, run); neuter; indicative; preterit; third person; singular.

Fastest: adverb in the superlative degree; POSITIVE, fast; COMPARATIVE, faster; SUPERLATIVE, fastest.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

This frost lasts long. Those gardeners work hard. This pen writes well. That news arrived soon. Which student rises earliest? What weather pleases best? These

horses gallop surprisingly. This thunder rolls awfully. Which leg stumbles oftenest? What thought occurs seldomest? That plan failed completely. These folks laugh heartily. This bolt holds strongly. Which person went thither? What message came yesterday?

☞ *Form further examples.*

*Noun or pronoun nominative; verb, with or without adverb negative; and with infinitive of a verb governed by the other verb.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

George wished to stay.

George: noun (proper); masculine; third person; singular; nominative.

Wished: verb regular; neuter; indicative; preterit; third person; singular.

To-stay: verb governed in the infinitive.

He does not know.

He: personal pronoun; masculine; third person; singular; nominative.

Does: verb irregular (do, did: it has no participle when used as an auxiliary: Accidence, page xiii.); indicative; present; third person; singular.

Not: adverb.

Know: verb governed in the infinitive.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Patients hope to live. Sinners dare not die. They must die. Summer seems to linger. Winter will come. William would not learn. All ought to agree. Thomas may go. We shall not stay. God can never err. He will not change. He cannot deceive. I will not despair. Who is to go? You may stay. We ought to speak. Jerusalem was to fall. He should not despair. We may mistake. They resolve to mend.

☞ *Form further examples.*

*Noun or pronoun nominative, with verb, and participle imperfect or perfect governed by the verb ; or with verb, and infinitive governed by the verb ; sometimes with the addition of a participle governed by the infinitive ; and of a second participle following the first.*

**MODEL EXAMPLES.**

George has slept.

George: noun (proper); masculine; third person; singular; nominative.

Has: verb irregular (have, had; as an auxiliary, it has no participle perfect, Accidence xiv.); indicative; present; third person; singular.

Slept: participle perfect of the irregular verb *To sleep*, (sleep, slept, slept.)

Traitors were punished.

Traitors: noun; common gender; third person; plural; nominative.

Were: verb irregular (am or be, was been); indicative; preterit; third person; plural.

Punished: participle perfect of the regular verb *To punish*.

He could have been arrested.

He: personal pronoun; masculine; third person; singular; nominative case.

Could: verb irregular (can, could); potential sign; conditional present; third person; plural.

Have: verb infinitive.

Been: participle perfect.

Arrested: participle perfect.

**EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.**

I have confessed. Many have failed. All had been playing. Saints must have sinned. Eliza will have been delighted. They should have been told. Contempt will be incurred. I shall have been promoted. Joy may have predominated. You must have been dreaming. Precautions could have been taken. Innocence had triumphed. Armies were conquering. Armies were conquered. Schemers had been entrapping. Schemers had been entrapped. They will have been punished. Destruction might have been prevented.

☞ *Form further examples.*

*Noun or pronoun nominative, with verb dividial made up of verb and infinitive ; or of verb and participle ; or of verb, verb infinitive, and participle perfect ; or of verb, verb infinitive, participle perfect, and participle imperfect.*

### MODEL EXAMPLES.

*I do love.*

*I* : personal pronoun ; first person ; singular ; nominative.

*Do love* : verb\* ; indicative mood ; present tense dividial ; first person ; singular.

*Eliza was reading.*

*Eliza* : noun (proper) ; feminine ; third person ; singular ; nominative : thus declined, &c.

*Was reading* : verb ; indicative mood ; preterimperfect tense ; third person ; singular.

*Phœbus had risen.*

*Phœbus* : noun (proper) ; masculine ; third person ; singular ; nominative : thus declined, &c.

*Had risen* : verb neuter ; indicative mood ; preterpluperfect tense ; third person, singular.

*You might be beaten.*

*You* : personal pronoun ; second person ; plural ; nominative.

*Might be beaten* : verb passive ; potential mood ; conditional present tense ; second person ; plural.

*He is risen.*

*He* : personal pronoun ; masculine ; third person ; singular ; nominative.

*Is risen* : verb neuter with a passive form ; indicative mood ; present tense ; third person ; singular.

### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

*We do ascend. Many are sinking. Adam did fall. What was happening? Multitudes will come. Thomas has been dismissed. We shall have succeeded. Maria can*

\* It would be wrong to call it either active or neuter : the construction must be continued, "I do love *her* or *them*," to make it grammatically active : if we call the verb active, we must say *active unapplied*. See Principles (II. 227), page 121.

sing. William could sing.\* Armies may have been beaten. He would have fainted. I am studying. You do grow. He is grown. They were dancing. Henry has dined. Many had perished. I shall stay. They will have come. Do attend. He can see. He could see. She may have fallen. I might have been comforted.

☞ *Form further examples, and then go back to the bottom of page 25, in order to parse, in the same manner as these, the examples which were there given to be resolved throughout into individual parts.*

### *Clauses joined to Sentences by Prepositions.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLE.

I am going to the South of France.

I am going: *to be parsed as previously shown.*

To: preposition.

The South of France: clause objective, joined to the sentence by *to*.

South: noun neuter, third person; singular; objective after *to*.

The: definite article belonging to the noun *South*.

Of: preposition.

France: noun (proper) neuter; third person; singular; objective after *of*.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

We have called for your friend, James. What is the matter with good Jacob? It is made of leather. It is tied with packthread. He walks upon stilts through the street. They plunged into the midst of the stream. The ship was hidden amidst the waves. There is nothing like leather. It is worth twenty guineas. Thou shalt have none but me. I know him by the quickness of his gait. They went from England in a ship towards the north of Europe. I travelled round the island along the shore of the sea. They wander the groves among. It glided the rocks between.

\* This, unless a context makes it the conditional present tense, is the preterit tense, potential.



*Sentences prefixed or added to sentences by conjunctions, some of the sentences so joined being in the subjunctive mood.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

If he go, I will accompany him.

If: conjunction.

He: *as previous examples show.*

Go: verb neuter; subjunctive mood; present-future tense; third person; singular.

I will accompany him: *to be parsed as previous examples show.*

Let him know that I will not comply.

Let him know: verb; imperative dividual; third person; singular.

That: conjunction.

I will not comply: *to be parsed as previous examples show.*

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

I will dance, and you shall play.—Thou must lend him the money; for he needs it.—It is very strange, but it is true.—Though I were busy, yet I would find time for this particular act of friendship.—I were miserable beyond expression, if I had no other friend.—Do not let your hopes be extravagant, and your disappointments will be few.—He would willingly assist me, but he has no means.—Unless thou make haste, thou wilt not arrive in time.—He were a wretch, if he did not assist me in this extremity.—When you have collected your other friends, then will I come with my assistance.—Take care that thou break not thy promise.—Let him be on his guard lest he be surprised.—Scarcely a month has passed, since he was guilty of the same great mistake.—Thomas will never succeed in anything, because he never perseveres.

---

#### *Sentences accompanied by Interjections.*

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Oh! how happy I am.—He came; but ah! too late.—Alas! what can I do?—Come hither, ho!—Why, O man! dost thou boast of thy strength?—Hark! how sweetly she sings.—Lo! he comes in triumph.—Hist! make no noise.—You are just in time; welcome!—Farewell! let us hope soon to meet again.

## EXERCISES FOR WRITING.

## AN EXERCISE\* FOR LEARNING THE USE OF CAPITALS.

See Principles (I. 51), page 36 : Key, page 1.

## STORY OF A BOY SAVED FROM RUIN.

GEORGE ARMSTRONG was a boy of naturally good understanding, and good heart. but he was the only son of a doating mother, a widow who lived in a retired village ; and she, instead of sending him to a good school at a distance, kept him at home, where he could receive no instruction but what was supplied at the very humble day-school of the place. hence, when george had nearly completed his twelfth year, he could scarcely read or write ; his chief accomplishments being birds'-nesting, trap-ball, cricket, and marbles ; of which last though he could count a hundred, his skill in arithmetic scarcely went further. he knew the days of the week, however ; for he disliked one day, and that was sunday ; and he liked another, which was thursday ; because it was only on this day, that, from the state of their little market, his mother could indulge him with pork sausages for dinner ; a savoury but unwholesome dish, of which george was voraciously fond. his mother made some attempts to teach him the truths of the bible ; but george, who found himself quite as clever as the village boys around, relieved himself from all the trouble of attention, by thinking on his bats, balls, and birds'-nests, while his mother was talking of adam and eve, of the fall of man, of the deluge, of the old dispensation, of god's chosen people, of the new testament, and such other points belonging to sacred writ, as came within the limits of her slender formal theology. thus unread in his sacred word who made and governs all, it will easily be supposed that george knew nothing of the history of his own country ; and accordingly, if any one spoke of the ancient britons, the saxons, the conquest, the barons, the feudal system, the church, the wars of the

\* To be divided, at the discretion of the teacher, into several exercises. The whole may also serve for suitable parsing lessons, in sequence of the examples thus far furnished.

houses, the conquests of henry the fifth, the reformation, the commonwealth, the restoration, or the revolution, he would quickly be interrupted by george's ordinary exclamation, "nonsense!"

the widow we speak of, lived in a comfortable house, which was her own property, and she had besides an easy independent income. her only relation beside george, was a brother in india; and most providentially for the future happiness both of the mother and child, this brother returned to europe at the time we have in view, sought this sequestered spot of his native england, and took up his abode in the house of his sister. here he soon perceived the ruin that was in progress, and lost no time in pointing it out to the fond mother. it was not without difficulty that he roused her fears; as to her understanding, that was impenetrable: she saw nothing in her boy but growing good nature and good spirits; and, as to learning, why should he be burthened with it, when he would have money enough to keep him quite above drudgery of any kind. however, though with difficulty, the uncle gained his point; and not more than a month after his arrival at his sister's, was on the way, with george, to a school of high reputation, far removed from the danger of his mother's frequent visits, and the still greater danger of a frequent recal home.

it is impossible to describe the mortifications to which george was now subjected. had he not been a boy of spirit, these indeed would never have been felt: but he could not bear to be inferior in things, in which he soon saw it was honourable to excel; and, in these things, george was inferior to the youngest in the school. his instructors found no difficulty in turning these feelings to account: indeed, they were often obliged to restrain them, lest, from his eagerness to ascend the hill of learning, in the paths of which he was behind all his companions, he might overtask his strength, to the detriment of that strong bodily health which he had hitherto enjoyed.

at the end of a twelvemonth, george returned to spend some holidays at home. his mother met him with all the warmth which might be expected from her doating nature, and his long absence; but while she loaded him with kisses,

she felt, or she fancied, (for george had lost his boisterous way of meeting her,) that his embrace was cold. "my dear, dear george," said she, i hope you are not altered toward your mother." "not toward you, mother," said he, "but i hope i am altered in many things. oh! what should i have been in a few years more, if uncle had not come to see us!" the words were not meant for a reproach, but they sounded so to the mother, and she burst into tears. these relieved her heart, and had their proper effect upon george, who threw his arms around her neck, and returned her kisses in such a manner, that she could no longer suspect any decrease in his affection toward her. the sequel scarcely needs be told. george grew up to be a blessing to his mother, and an ornament to society, though, but for his uncle's interference, there can hardly be a doubt, that he would have become a curse to the one, and a disgrace to the other.

## EXERCISES IN ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

## INSTRUCTIONS\*.

☞ *In copying the sentences, observe the various spelling of one and the same sound; for instance, of the sound ā in the first set of sentences; of the sound ē in the second; and so on.*

*Put into the plural number the nouns and pronouns in italic.*

*Omit the indefinite article when the noun before which it stands is made plural.*

## KEY, pages 3 and 4.

Ā. Give the *cake* away.—*He* met with a strange *plague*.—An *angel* will hail the good.—*I* must survey the *chamber*.—They fail to gain any great *praise*.—An ancient *lady* arrayed in a *veil* came to pray.—The *sailor* became afraid of a *beast* of prey.—A *baby* cannot feign.—Let us well weigh

\* For further instruction and assistance see PRINCIPLES of GRAMMAR, (I. I. ii.) page 4: also (II. VI. iii.) page 110: also the ACCIDENCE, pages v. and xli.

by how many a *way* we may go astray.—She saw many a *greyhound*, and few of them were *gray*.

ī. What *see* has he?—In the *field*, I perceived a *goose*.—Such a *speech* I never believed that any people would speak.—What a large *foot* he has!—The *leaf* will fall when the *sheaf* shall be housed.—The *grief* of the *chief* increased.—He seized many a *deer*, and many a *sheep*.—Her *niece* could never conceive why she was displeased.—His *fatigue* cannot be relieved.—*Thou* must not seek to deceive by such a *treaty*.

ī. If *thou* tell a *lie*, his love will fly, and so will mine.—The *crier* could find no *bayer*—A child can take the *life* of many a *fly*, or, like a little tyrant, make a *mouse* painfully die.—They use a *die* in coining, and a *die* in gaming.—The *dye* dyes the white *blind* green.—He dies after *escape* from many a *fight*.—We contrive to supply the place of writing by printing from a *type*.—An *aisle* of a church, and an *isle* in the sea, are very different things.—To indict for a *crime*, is one thing, and to indite a *letter* is another.—The fine viscount does not like a nasty *swine*.—How many a *strife* might I avoid by kindness!—My *eye* seemed dizzy in climbing so high.—Let us, like a *butterfly*, hie away, fly away.

ō. He was no foe to the poor *negro*.—His *toe* felt the cold in that land of *snow*.—They were armed with *bow* and *arrow*.—Such a *folio* alarmed the young *tyro*.—The *rogue* beheld my *woe* with *soul* unmoved.—He dined on oatmeal or a cold *potato*.—The *soul* of a *poet* can soar and glow.—A mean-souled *fellow* cannot be a *hero*.—The bold *yeoman* drove the *rogue* away.—My *comb* fell, but only one broke, and not both.—*Thou* must bestow the *loaf* and poultry on poor Job.

ū. A *rebuke* will be due to *thee* for any new future *abuse*.—A *dew* renewed the hue and beauty of the fields.—Adieu, said he, to the *pursuit* of my youth.—He produced the *ewe*, but refused the feudal *due*, and impugned the usage.—A new *duty* ensued on opening a new *view*.—The curate knew his *cue*, and removed the *pew*.

---

☛ Continue to observe the various spelling of the same sound; for instance, of the short or shut *ă* in the first set of words; of the shut *ĕ* in the second; and so on.

Put into its possessive case every noun in *italic*; if the noun is singular, put it into the possessive singular; if plural, into the possessive plural.\*

### KEY, page 5.

*Ă* as in *at*. I have the *man* cap and plaid.—He rammed sand down the *cannon* deep cavity.—The old *castle* battlements cracked under the *cannons* blast.—He bade the *Canon* man carry the repast to his *master* room.—The *Canons* chapel stands near the tavern.—The *wag* hat had a fantastic flap.—We have to stand these *wags* raillery.

*Ĕ* as in *et*. The *men* heads get heavy.—He could get no bread, so he eat the *pheasant* flesh by itself.—She said that the *peasants* zealous blessings deeply affected her breast.—The *leopard* den was one *heifer* death-place; and probably had been ten *heifers* death-place.—He did it for a *friend* benefit, and not for an *enemy*.—He prays for his *enemies* good, as well as for his *friends*.

*Ĭ* as in *it*. A *fish* fin is pretty.—*Fishes* fins assist them as wings.—The motive of *women* visits is civility, not business.—The *captain* spirits will not sink: he has lived through many *kings* reigns, and has ever been his *sovereign* genuine vindicator.

*Ŏ* as in *or*. *Folly* wanton costs demolish honest profits.—Was not the *ox* halter gone?—He wanted a quantity of *oxen* houghs.—Part of the lost shough *dog* body, was found in that horrid *hog* trough.—The *scholar* knowledge of logic astonished the sophists.—*Warriors* brows are crowned with laurel; *scholars* brows with bay or olive.

*Ū* as in *ut*. The hubbub does not come from your *brothers* comrades.—My *mother* first cousin is young.—One must not be cozened out of *one* comforts.—The blood from your *brother* cut thumb comes through his glove.—Among the *monks* studies, some were dull enough.—*Cromwell* courage was accompanied by cunning.—He was

\* See ACCIDENCE, page vii.; PRINCIPLES (II. 204), page 114.

in a hurry to get into *Surrey* pleasant plains.—A *man* courage is not shown by empty flourishes.

---

☞ Observe, as usual, the various spelling of the same sound; for instance, of the sound heard in saying the word *ah*; in saying the word *awe*; in saying *oy* as in *boy*; in saying *ow* as in *now*; and so on.

Put into the possessive plural every noun in *italic* which is in the possessive singular; and into the possessive singular every noun in *italic* which is in the possessive plural.

KEY, page 5.

AH. Ah! my *forefather's* paths daunt me; rather be mine the *hearts'* calm than *glories'* palm.—He eat half a *calves'* head.—On the calm and balmy air floated the holy *father's* psalm.

AWE. Awe-struck by the *lions'* broad paws, and the *monsters'* still more appalling jaws, he ran away with a loud squall, and kept on bawling without a *moments'* pause.—The *Gauls'* fall was wrought by his two *daughter's* haughtiness.—As we walked and talked, our ears caught the awful *waterfalls'* distant brawl.

OY as in BOY. My youngest *boys'* choice disappointed me.—The viceroy came with a *spoilers'* voice, and a *destroyers'* sword.—*Troys'* defenders were foiled by the *Greek's* cunning decoy.

OW as in NOW. Cows now browse on the *mountains'* brow.—The stout *clowns'* blowzy spouse bounced into the house.—It fell from the *mice's* mouth.—The *scoundrels'* profound bow roused the *ploughmen's* doubt.—If the *sloughs'* dirt disappears on account of the drought, so does the *fountains'* spouting freshness.

ŌO as in FOOD. The *moons'* movement is true to rule.—Who cares to lose a *fools'* loose reproof, or a *boobies'* foolish praise?—The *youths'* shoes and boots wanted recruiting as he grew.—A *geese's* food lies in the *pools'* oozy bed.—He drew, but left the *teeth's* root.

ŌŌ as in WOOD. The *cooks'* foot was like a *bull's'*—

He took the *women's* hood, and put it into a nook.—She stood on *pusses'* bushy tail.—He fully withstood the *wolves'* fierce look.—Who would have looked on Wolsey, whether on the woolsack or in the pulpit, as an Ipswich *butchers'* son?

Still remark the various spelling of the same sound, which sound will be observed to terminate, in every instance, in what may be called the smooth r.

Change each noun in *italic* for the correspondent noun of the opposite gender.\*

#### KEY, page 6.

AR as in ARK. The *roes* dart away, but the *harts* are not to be parted from their young.—She is the *arbiter* of my heart's regards.—The *marchioness* called for his sword; the *marquess* for her needlework.—The sovereigns of Russia are called *czarinas*.

ER or IR as in ERR or in IRK. The *ermined countess* deferred the earnest of his grace; nor did we err when we averred that he had not the virtue to be merciful.—It was irksome to the *earl* to be interrupted in her mirth.—Sweet with myrtle and myrrh, the *boy* preferred a prayer for herself and the other virgins.

OR as in ORB. The *witch* had orders to perform, but he scorned to yield accord.—The Norman was not a commoner, but born a *lady*; he resorted to the wars, and kept a dwarf to hold his *mare*, and to follow him to all his quarters.

UR as in URN or in SULPHUR. He was a *murderess* and a scourge, and she was a *hunter* that urged the chace for furs.—While eating curds, he said these words,—every cur is not a *dog*,† but every *dog*† is a dog.—A beggar grew rich by clamour, and hawking an elixir, when a lurking robber came as a visitor, and soon appeared in the

\* For further instruction and assistance, see Accidence xliii.; Principles (II., 193-202), page 112.

† There is a prejudice which forbids the feminine of this word to be sounded aloud. As, however, it is a mere prejudice, there can be no harm in writing it.



character of *executrix*, occasioning many a murmur by claiming every acre, as the legal possessor.—The astronomer said that the *ewe* and the *cow* were in the nadir.—He who held the sceptre was a *widow*.—In her dress she was quite a *beau*; she hated labour, and was fond of clangor and splendor; so that the tenor of her behaviour, was far from doing her honour.—He was a dissipated *actress*, with a face deformed by tumors occasioned by diseased humors.—My nephew is a *lass* of much humour.

ARE *as in CARE*. To take a double fare was not fair; so I took him before the *mayoress*.—Though the proper word for a she-horse is *horse*, a she-bear can but be called a bear.—He was the *heiress* of all the lands there.

ERE *as in MERE*. Here near the mere was a park of deer, held very dear by the *peer*, because they supplied her table with good cheer.—Placed on many a bier, lay the coffins of new-married girls one above another so as to form a tier; on which the surviving *brides* had shed many a tear.

IRE *as in MIRE*. Sappho was a *poet*, whose fire, when she struck the lyre, raised the fancy higher and higher.—One of the men was a *nun*, the other, the *prioress* of the abbey, who each refused to be a liar for hire.

ORE *as in MORE*. He ceased not to implore the men at the oar to make for the port; vowing that on reaching shore, the finest male pig on board, namely a *sow* of four years' growth, should be sacrificed before the door of the fort.

URE *as in CURE*. Your gifts must be pure; a she-beast, namely a *bullock* of this year, and wine in a large full ewer.—There were fewer female fish, namely *millers*; and the males or *spawners* were not to be caught by the newer hands.

OOR *as in POOR*. I am sure, said the boor, that though she is poor, she is no *sloven*, but a very handy doer.—Over the moor, passing some *stags* that had strayed from their males, we lengthened our tour, in spite of our lazy friend the brewer.

OWER *as in POWER*. The hour was twelve; the place a tower, whence looking down, we saw a *lion*, at a distance from her mate, devour a lamb that had fallen into her

power.—Though neither a *hero* nor a *hunter*, she is to me the flower of her sex, the *king* of my bower : sweet is my bread if her hand knead the flour ; pleasant the moments which she, whose looks are never sour, whose gentleness is a dower inexhaustible, spends with me at the evening hour.

---

## INSTRUCTIONS—continued.

✎ The learner having so far applied his observation to various modes of spelling the VOWEL SOUNDS, must now remark that the CONSONANT ELEMENTS are also liable to various modes of spelling ; for instance, that the aspirate generally denoted by *h* alone, is sometimes spelled by *wh*, (which happens when the *w* is silent, and not in such words as *wheat*, *whim* ; ) that the sound of *w* is sometimes denoted by *u*, or included in letter *o* ; and so forth.

Put into the comparative or superlative degree the adjective or adverb in *italic*,—into the superlative if preceded by the article *the* ; into the comparative if not so preceded.\*

## KEY, page 8.

*h*. The house standing here is high ; but that one is *high*, and the other, the *high*.—He is hindered by a heavy cold, and by being hoarse ; but I am hindered by a *heavy* cold, and am *hoarse* ; while you have the *heavy* cold, and are the *hoarse*.—Of the whole company, who is the *hind* ?

*w*. We weave it ill, but William weaves it *ill*, and Walter is the one that weaves it the *ill* of all ; so that we are all bad weavers ; that is to say, we are bad ones, William is a *bad* one, and Walter the *bad*.—My weakness wears me, and leaves me quite languid and wan ; but you were once much *wan*.—We work well ; but the others work still *well*.—The buoy in this place is very strong and large ; but yonder buoy is still *strong* and *large*.—We wandered *far* and *far* ; but you wandered the *far*.

\* For further instruction and assistance, see Accidence ("Degrees of Comparison") page xxvi. ; and (No. 5) pages li. lii. Also, Principles (II. iii.), page 118.

y. You say this yew is young and fit for use; but that one yonder is *young* and *fit*: this will yield much material, and supply the archer with many bows; but that will yield *much* material, and supply *many* bows.—Letter U, the *near* letter to 'T, is no longer yoked with V.—The *fore* spaniel yelped and yelled, till he was beyond the yard.

s. See the cedar in this scene, how slim it is; but this one is *slim* than *any* I have seen; except this, which is the *slim*.—The cynic in his cell is silly; but not *silly* than the soaker ready to sell his soul for something to swill.—A singer singing psalms sat in the inner recess; and in the *inner*, a soothsaying seer.—With the *little* sense, he might have avoided the offence.—Sticks, the plural of stick, and Styx, the fabled river in hell, are the same in sound; but what *much* different in sense?

z. His zeal blazes so as to prove him the *fore* of all in the cause.—I discern his *old* brother, who possesses prizes in houses, and lives at present without exertion, though, in days past, he was but an *up* servant.—She dissolves in tears at the *little* surmise that she must sacrifice the *small* ease.—Let it suffice to say, that if your cousin has cozened us, and is *cruel* to the poor than a miser, yet you are the *cruel*.

---

Our language has simple consonants, for which its alphabet furnishes no appropriate letters; two such consonants under different modes of spelling, come next in order for the learner to observe.

Convert the adjective in italic into an adverb by adding *ly*, with such previous adaptation, as will sometimes be necessary.\*

KEY, page 9.

THE CONSONANT *heard* in SHE. She will most *like* shrink from censure.—Their sham good wishes were *nauseous* sugared.—The chamois among sheep plays *gay* and *happy*.—The issue will *sure* show how *unhappy* rash was the

\* For further instruction, see Principles (I. 25, 26), page 18.

expression.—They are a nation of a warm complexion, and *quick* liable to passion.—The shock of the machine was a *true* awful crash.—It was a shabby chaise; yet *due* paid for.—How luscious, *apparent*, in this hushed and spacious shade, is the shepherd's vocation!

THE CONSONANT in the middle of VISION. His persuasion that he had seen a vision was *easy* removed by a little collusion.—How *able* you fill your leisure, how *gay* you pass your hours of pleasure!—There cannot, said he *dry*, be a transition, without either an incision or an abscission.

☞ The letters *ch*, in words derived from Greek, spell the same sound as *k*; for instance, in *monarch*: in words derived from French they spell the same sound as *sh* in *she*; for instance, in *chaise*: otherwise, these two letters spell the double sound, *t* and *sh*, uttered as one sound; but the same double sound is liable to be spelled differently; which different ways, as exemplified hereunder, must be observed as usual. Observe, likewise, that in the same way in which *t* and *sh* are liable to unite as if they were one sound, *d* and the consonant in the middle of *vision* are liable to unite; as in *jay*, and in *age*; and the different ways of spelling must also in this case be remarked.\*

Add *able* or *ible* to the words in *italic*, with proper omission of superfluous letters.†

#### KEY, page 9.

CH as in EACH. The change is *favour*.—Unrighteous by nature, how can we be *profit*?—A chair can be moved, and is therefore called a *move*.—She was so *sense* a creature, that they deemed her a witch.—It will be much too *charge* even to the rich.—That feature of the adventure promised to be *service*.—There was a *value* picture fetched from a Dutch church.—Much of the batch was not *sale*†.

\* Concerning these sounds, see Principles (I. 14), page 4.

† For further instruction and assistance, see Principles (L. 26), page 18.

‡ The *e* must be retained in this formative lest it should be mistaken for a derivative of *sal*, salt.

*J as in JAY, or G as in AGE.* The judgment of a just judge should not be *reverse*.—A huge giant, by *force* outrage, pillaged the gem.—Rage and revenge, even in a soldier, are *blame*.—Genius without knowledge is neither *profit* nor *credit*.—James was not judged *response* for that suggestion, nor its gigantic effects.—What constitutes grandeur, and why verdure is beautiful, are *debate* points\*.

☞ *Remark that the sounds regularly signified by f and v, are liable, like other sounds, to different modes of spelling; also that our language has a simple consonant element spelled by th as in thaw, pith; and another which corresponds to it as v corresponds to f, z to s, &c., which is likewise spelled by th, as in they, with; though sometimes the latter is distinguished from the former by being spelled the; as in to breathe from the noun breath; to clothe from the noun cloth.*

*Change the verb infinitive in italic into the participle imperfect by removing the prefix to, and joining the termination ing, with whatever omission or addition of letters may previously be necessary\*.*

#### KEY, page 10.

f. The fear of his not *to profit*, was enough to roughen his feelings.—*To lean* on a staff, there was he, *to quaff* some home-brewed stuff, to assist a pipe that he was *to puff*; but at last he had a fit of *to cough*, that stopped his *to drink*, and *to smoke*, and *to laugh*.—Was it *to fit* that he should scoff and huff, and be so bluff, when I had never been rough to him, or failed to be friendly enough.—It is not safe to be *to fan* the fire even of a phlegmatic foe, whose turn of triumph may bring a rebuff.—My friend, a fellow famed for *to fag*, was seldom found *to laugh*, and never *to play*, except once at draughts.—The nymph who wore a ruff, *to defer* not to unfetter her unsophisticated feelings, told the tough old philosopher, in terms not smooth but rough, that he was a fool.—One of them was

\* Formatives in *able* and *ible* are continued hereafter, page 43.

† For further instruction and assistance, see Accidence ("There are two participles," &c.) page ix; and Principles (I. 24), page 17; also (I. 27), page 19. Again Principles (II.: VIII. iii.), page 123.

*to frolic* ; the other was *to traffic*.—I cannot help *to fancy*, he will fail of *to win* his wager, when he affirms that a sapphire is often found of a saffron colour.

v. It was of a vivid olive verdure, *to deserve* to be viewed.—He was very violent in *to vituperate* the viscount.—My nephew Stephen, the lieutenant, is a vulgar varlet, always *to mimic* our very devout vicar.—The veteran was *to label* his velvet bag for *to travel*.

TH as in THAW or PITH. Only think, said he, *to thumb* the leaves of a thick note-book, that I am *to enter* the thousandth month of my life.—I am only *to aver* a truth when I say, he brought on his death by too much *to physic* himself.—He was *to visit* his confessor on the eighth, and again *to revel* through thick and thin on the twelfth. Do you tell me, with such thoughtless apathy, that he is *to die* ?—I do : for he is not *to die* by *to breathe* his last ; he is only *to dye* cloth.

TH as in THEY or WITH. My father, mother, and brother, after *to inquire* the way, walked thither together.—Beneath the smooth turf, where we had been *to gather* wreaths, those worthy brethren lay buried.—By *to permit* the barbarous custom of *to duel*, he gave cause for *to unsheathe* many a needless sword, and led many a man to bathe his hands in a comrade's blood.

☛ The next consonants, to be placed with various modes of spelling under the learner's observation, are l as in lay, m as in may, n as in nay ; the simple element spelled by ng as in long, and the rough r as in ray : the smooth r we have had already at page 35.

Change the verb infinitive into the participle perfect by removing the prefix to, and joining the termination ed, with whatever omission, change, or addition of letters may previously be necessary\*.

#### KEY, page 11.

L. Lately, all the low pales that lined the lake were *to lower*, and then entirely *to level*.—The castle was not *to*

\* For further instruction and assistance, consult the Accidence and Principles at the parts referred to in the note at foot of page 40.

*victual*, the soldiers on the island were without mettle, and there were no cannons of heavy metal.—In alleging lameness for having *to linger* in the left aisle of the building, he has *to lie*. I like lampreys *to fry*.

M. Mammon has *to master* his mind.—*To dry* salmon was *to cry* in the market.—His military mantle was *to dye* by the mulberries.—An apophthegm is a monitory remark *to emit* from the mouth of a memorable man.—When the martyr had been *to condemn*, and had *to hymn* a psalm, with solemn dignity, to calm his emotion, he was *to inform* that he could not have his *to mat* beard *to trim*; nor the *to dim* windows of his chamber *to open*, beneath which he was *to be to entomb*.

N. Nineveh is now as though she had never *to reign* the queen city of numberless nations.—The dog has not *to gnarl* for nothing while gnawing his bone; he is *to cabin* and *to chain*, but he knows the signs when knavery is being *to plan*, and signifies, by his gnashing, that he will snap at your knuckles, when they are near enough to be *to knap*.

NG as SINGER. The feelings of the deserving young king are *to wrong* by such biting sayings.—He was *to thank* for having sunk a long tank facing the building.—The lute was a *to string* thing, which he had long *to long* to see, and to hear *to twang* in concord at a banquet.

R as in RAY. He was a rural rhymster, with more reason than rhetoric, who was *to report* to have *to wrestle* better with his robust wrists, than at his occupation of writing, when he wrested rhymes that would not otherwise wriggle into regularity.—The barrister was much *to harass*, on account of the witness's being *to embarrass* when speaking of the arras.

☞ *The next consonants, to be placed as usual under the learner's observation, are p as in pay, and b as in bay, which have the same sort of correspondence as s with z, f with v, &c.*

*Continue to add, as in a former exercise (39), able or ible to the words in italic, which words hereunder are verbs infinitive, from which the prefix must be removed.*

## KEY, page 12.

P. The plea pretended was neither proved nor *to prove*.—To have pried into my pocket was not *to excuse*; but his pride, on so paltry a proceeding, was *to laugh*.—A diphthong or triphthong is not properly *to discern* by the eyes, but *to assign* to the judgment only of the ears.—Naphtha is a species of pitch *to collect* from pools in particular places.—The powder put by for pills is so spoiled, as not to be *to dispense*.

B. The act of the barbarian who stabs, or of the burglar who robs, is *to trace* to a motive less base than that of many a bantering backbiter.—Bounty seems blessed when it enters his cupboard, but nothing is *to transfer*\* thence.—That his object was to burlesque the poem, seemed *to infer*\* from his bombastic and gibling diatribe. The beauty of an object is never *to refer*\* to its bulkiness.

---

☞ *The next two consonants are k as in key, and g as in gay; not the soft g as in age or gem, which we have had already at page 40, but a consonant having the same relation to k, that s has to z, f to v, &c.*

*Add ness to the adjectives in italic, with whatever previous change or omission may be necessary.*

## KEY, page 12.

K. The king called to the count in great choler, but not without *kind*, though he keenly signified how much he was piqued.—The dog was of the kind called shough, that showed great *ready* for learning tricks, and had much *sly*.—There was a *full* about the hough of the ox, and a want of *clean*.—It is a common case, in kitchens, to see a lack of *cleanly*.

\* Writers differ with regard to these formatives. Johnson gives *transferrible*, but writes *inferable*. Some writers attempt to assort them all with *preferable*; but this is not a formative from the verb *to prefer*: it is borrowed from the French, and with us has the accent on the first syllable. Johnson's spelling of the first-mentioned word ought to be adopted, and the other formatives spelled correspondently.



G as in GAY. *Godly* is great gain.—*Dull* of eye, *green* of skin, *gross* of humours, are bad guarantees of health.—The *vague* of his expressions, and the *ghastly* of his looks, were proofs of guilt that he could not subsequently gild by giving glib excuses.—He dragged me out to gaze at the *gibbous* of the waning moon.—When we used the gimblet, the wood cracked on account of its *dry*; but we dug away without *weary* till we got a hole as big as an egg.

---

¶ The last two consonants, to be placed as usual under the learner's observation, are t as in *too* and d as in *do*.

Add *ful* to the nouns in *italic*, with whatever previous adaptation may be necessary\*.

#### KEY, page 13.

t. *Need* tautology does not tire, nor tend to satiety.—Thomas was so *fancy* as to try to traverse the Thames in a tub; and he did it in spite of his *awe* trembling, and his *rue* fears.—A *skill* indictment pressed heavily on the debtor, backed by the *success* tactics of an *art* attorney.—Flavia's *will* and subtle temper distressed Ptolemy.—On the receipt of the tidings, he sent out a *beauty* yacht.

d. It is *distress* to be judged by our undesigned deeds.—David could be *duty* if he would.—How *awe*, yet how *law*, and *use*, to dwell on the doom of the dead!—They lied when they called the image a *bliss* god; but it was odd they could deem that he gave them a *mercy* nod.—*Bdellium* is a *scent* juice, the product of a tree.

---

#### EXERCISES IN ETYMOLOGY—continued.

##### INSTRUCTIONS—continued.

¶ The learner has now had his attention called to every vowel and consonant element in turn, and has seen that each is liable to various modes of spelling. The following Exercises will no longer call his attention specially and methodically to these points; and they will therefore

\* For further instruction and assistance, See Principles (I. 26) page 18.

cease to be, in the same especial manner, exercises in orthography. But, on the learner's part, the habit of observation thus commenced, must be continued, till the well-trained eye knows authorized and accustomed spelling, as the well-trained ear knows authorized and accustomed pronunciation\*.—Carrying with him this general admonition as regards orthography, the learner has to attend as usual to the instructions for practice in Etymology.

Convert the verbs in *italic* into nouns and the nouns into verbs. Principles II. XII., page 157.

KEY, page 13.

(1.) *To speak* is the distinguishing characteristic of man.—All men must *death*.—We *live* and *breath* to day, but we may be lifeless and breathless to-morrow.—*To advise* is lost on a senseless person.—We must *practice* goodness in order to *proof* its value.—From the past we may often *prophecy* of the future.—*To food* the hungry and *cloth* the naked, are duties of the rich.—A loyal man obeys the *summon* of his prince: a good prince will not needlessly *summons* his subjects.—Envy and *to strive* are too prevalent.—*To presume* and haughtiness *character* the upstart.—*To love*, *to hope*, and *to enjoy*, are pleasurable passions, whose contraries are, *to hate*, *to fear*, and *to grieve*.—*To corrupt*, is too often the effect *to prosper*.—I give and bequeath are verbs, whose correspondent nouns are *give* and *bequeath*.—When he had a cake, he always ran to *half* it with me.—They who *device* mischief, shall fall into their own *devise*.—You must apply for a *license* to those that have the power to *licence*.—Fond of the *chase*, if a hare crossed his path, he felt as though he must *chace* it.—The *to atow* of a fault is better than the *to conceal*, even when, in both cases, there is a *to determine* not to commit it again: but the *to commit* of a fault, without *to repent* of it, is the usual motive for concealing it.

\* See Principles (I. 21), page 14. Nothing can be more injudicious than those Spelling-Exercises, which habituate the eye to unauthorized combinations of letters: they do more mischief in this way than the learner can reap of good in trying to correct them.

☞ *Convert the adjectives in italic into verbs, and the verbs into adjectives.*

KEY, page 14.

(2.) Content and cheerfulness *bright* all objects ; peevishness and discontent *dark* them.—He tried to *equal* the quantities.—Being *safe* himself, he cared not to *safe* others.—Men try to *large* their estates much more than to *large* their minds.—If the quantity is great, it will *stupid* the powers : you must *less* it to make it useful.

---

☞ *Convert the substantives in italic into adjectives, and the adjectives into substantives.*

KEY, page 14.

(3.) It was *circle* in form, and of *gold* hue.—*Warm* and *moist* are necessary to most plants.—His *infant* simplicity did not disappear with his *young*.—It was six feet in *long*, ten in *broad*, and eight in *high*.—To signify that he was liberal to *merit* people, they had a picture painted of two female figures. *Liberal* rewarding Merit.—Its *sphere* form and *weight* substance, fitted it for our purpose.—He was a man of *substance* worth ; and his wife, a very *worth* woman.—As to be virtuous is to be happy, and vicious, miserable ; let us avoid *vicious*, and cling to *virtuous*.—On the desk, lay *geography* surveys, *number* calculations, *arithmetic* treatises ; and in the room, were some *music*, and other instruments.—*Careless* and *thoughtless* bring people to ruin.—There is no *Satan* influence, but where there is first a disobedient will.—His *temperance* habits kept his body sound and his mind clear.—Ghosts, they say, come in *body* shape, but not in *body* substance.—There are four forms of government, namely the *democracy* form, the *aristocracy*, the *monarchy*, and the mixed.—His *disinterested* and *generous* can never be forgotten.

---

Put each verb in *italic* into its preterit tense. See Accidence, pages ix. and xlv.—Principles II. VIII. iv., page 124.

KEY, page 14.

(1.) Alexander *to stretch* his conquests from Macedon to the Indian ocean: he *to place* a city in Egypt, which still bears his name; he *to vanquish* mighty armies, and *to learn* the ways to fame, but not the art to self-government: he *to die*, through drunkenness, at Babylon 324 years before the Christian era. He *to play* a mighty game; he *to say* many presumptuous things; he *to pray* for more worlds to conquer; he *to weep* when the sea *to stop* him; he *to dream* mighty designs which he never *to fulfil*; he *to lay* foundations of empires that soon *to split* to pieces; and, at last, he *to pay* the debt of humanity, rather as the forfeit of low vice, than of intrepid valour.

(2.) Yesterday I *to read* the third chapter of Genesis, in which it is recorded that Eve *to eat* first of the forbidden fruit, and then Adam. For this sin the angel *to cast* them out of Paradise, *to shut* the gate against them, and *to set* a flaming sword over. Who *to make* them guilty of such sin? Satan, in the Serpent, *to put* temptation in their way, and their hearts *to slide* into it, and so they *to lose* their first estate. No doubt Adam *to beat* his breast, and Eve *to rend* her hair; but in vain: they *to pass* on with many sorrows and few joys, as their children now pass on, to death; they *to sweat* as their children now sweat to gain their food; Eve *to breed* with sorrow the first-born creatures of our kind; nor was it long before one of these, *to bleed* under the hand of a brother.

(3.) Sarah, in her age, *to bear* a son to Abraham.—Job *to bear* affliction with a patience not witnessed before.—David, when he had killed Goliath, *to cleave* his head from his shoulders.—Ruth affectionately *to cleave* to her mother-in-law.—Sisera *to lie* down to rest in the tent of Jael; who *to lay* a mantle on him, and, while he *to sleep*, *to slay* him.—Ananias *to lie* concerning the price for which he had sold his land.—When Peter *to understand* his Lord's mission, doubtless he *to hang* up the sword with which he

*to smite* off the ear of the high-priest's servant.—When Judas had betrayed his Lord, he *to go* and *to hang* himself.—When the Lord *to rise* from the dead, the Jews *to raise* a report, that his disciples had taken him away by night.

(4.) Egypt *to be* the country in which the arts and sciences first *to take root*, *to grow*, and *to spread*. Anciently, as now, the Nile *to flow* through the midst of it, and yearly *to overflow* its banks. The people *to flee* from the inundation, not with terror but with joy, because they *to know* that it *to bring* fertility. Superstition *to thrive* in Egypt; but so it *to do* even in Greece and Rome: for instance, if a bird let loose, *to fly* to the left, it was, with both, an unlucky omen. Memphis, the ancient capital of Egypt, *to stand* about 100 miles from the mouth of the Nile, not far from the modern capital, Cairo. Thebes, with her hundred gates, *to shine* in a more distant part, about 200 miles south of Memphis.

(5.) Last week, my friend *to write* familiarly to me: he *to tell* me, that he *to dare* his brother John to go at midnight into the church-yard; on which John *to say* that he *to dare* go; so, getting his lantern, he *to light* it, and *to go*. My friend *to steal* after him, and *to lean* against a tombstone, while he *to keep* his eyes on John's proceedings. John *to get* a glimpse of him, *to throw* down his lantern, and *to run* home as fast as he *can*. He *to shake* for an hour afterwards; and my friend *to take* much blame to himself for what he *to have* done.

---

Put each verb in italic into its participle perfect:  
Compare the previous Exercise at the bottom of page 41.

KEY, page 16.

(1.) When ancient Rome had *to stand* 1229 years, her rule was *to destine* to end. After she had *to fall* before the Goths, new scenes were gradually *to develop*. The volume of ancient history was *to shut*; modern history had *to begin*. The foundations of many new states were now *to lay*. History being thus, as it were, new-*to bear*, should thenceforward have *to bear* only truth on her pages; but

she has *to lie* as much in recording the events of the middle ages, as she did in transmitting those of early Greece and Rome; and, in all times, important truths have *to lie* concealed through her negligence.

(2.) All is in motion. While the horseman has *to ride* to his resting place, while the bird has *to fly* to her nest, while the hare has *to flee* to her form; the general operations of nature, have not *to sleep*, nor *to stop*, nor for a moment *to stand* still. Stars have *to rise* or *to set*. The sun has *to speed* his course over one part of the earth, and has *to raise* his beams over another. Wonders have been *to work* in the bowels of the earth; and, on its surface, the grass has *to grow*, and the seed has *to shoot* up.

(3.) Charles, who is *to know* for a sad babbler, kept me in talk about some officer that had *to be to break* for cowardice; a fellow that was often *to drink*, and who, one evening, when he had, as usual, *to drink* more than enough, and had *to light* and *to smoke* a dozen cigars, fell down on his way home, and was *to tread* upon by a dozen people, before he was *to pick* up. I am *to worry* and *to put* out by having *to be to speak* to on such subjects.

---

☞ Put the verbs in italic into the preterperfect or the preterpluperfect tense indicative, as the context may require.

KEY, page 17.

(1.) Up to the present year, 1847, the house of Hanover *to possess* the throne of Great Britain for one hundred and thirty-three years. When George the First came to the crown, the union of Scotland with England *to exist* only eight years, namely, from the year 1706. At present, forty-seven years of the nineteenth century *to elapse*. When the present queen, Victoria, came to the crown, namely, in 1837, thirty-six years *to intervene* from the date of the union of Ireland with Great Britain.

(2.) Probably it seldom *to happen* that the sweet Psalmist of Israel, and the old poet of Greece, *to be* thought of at the same moment. Yet, in time, they were not far apart. Perhaps David *not to be* dead twenty years when Homer

was born. When the Christian era commenced, the poems of the one *to be* known to the pagan world for a thousand years; and the Jews *to employ* the psalms of the other in their worship for something more than the same period.

---

☛ *Put the verbs in italic into the future, or the future-perfect tense indicative, as the context may require.*

KEY, page 17.

(1.) "How happy I *to be*," said a child to his mother, "when I am a man!" "Why you *to be* happy?" asked she. "Because I then *to do* what I like: nobody *to dare* to hinder me." "Look at that moth," said she; "he is flying at the candle, and after a few more turns, he *to scorch* himself to death. When you are a man, I hope you *to be* wiser than the moth, and, by that time, *to learn* why you are not now suffered, like this poor little creature, to do as you like."

(2.) I write, my dear cousin, to tell you that I *to come* and *to see* you next week, when I expect we *to enjoy* ourselves surpassingly. My brother *to join* us as soon as his holidays begin; but they not *to commence* for a fortnight; and, by that time, I hope we *to play* some of our merriest pranks. He sends me word that, before he sees us, he *to read* all through Virgil. Before the same time, I dare say that a great many undertakings, though of a different kind, *to be* completed by us.

---

☛ *Put the verbs in italic into one or the other of the following tenses of the potential and subjunctive moods: the conditional present, indicated by (a), with the sign might, could, would, or should, as the context may require; the conditional present individual, indicated by (b); the conditional past, doubly dividual, indicated by (c), with the sign might or could, &c. as the context may require; the conditional past, simply dividual, indicated by (d); the present-future subjunctive, indicated by (e); and the preterit-present subjunctive, indicated by (f). For the conjugation of verbs in which these names of*

*moods and tenses are used, see To have, To be, and To take, Accidence, pages xiii., xiv., xvii.*

KEY, page 18.

\*What a happy world (a) *to be* this, if all men (f) *to have* the gift of charity! If such (f) *to be* our condition, we (a) constantly *to think* and *to speak* well of each other; each (a) *to try* to increase the enjoyments of his neighbours; and no pain of mind or body (a) *to exist*, that all (a) not *to lend* assistance to alleviate: hatred, envy, malice, (a) *to be* sentiments unknown; and wars between nations (a) not *to exist*, even in thought. We (a) *to go* from land to land without fear; for in every land we (a) *to find* only brethren, ready with whatever acts of kindness they (a) *to perform*. A man (b) *to be* a fiend not at least to wish for such a state of things, supposing that he (f) *to wish* at all on the subject. Yet every one (b) *to have* rather remain what he is, than conform himself to a condition of society that ought to exist, yet does not. Amidst the evil which all have had a share in producing, each excuses himself thus: "I (c) *to withhold* my wrong-doing, if others (d) *to keep back*; I (d) *to be* all meekness, if others (d) not *to be* proud; I (c) *to give up* my selfish purposes, if others (d) *to show* themselves ready to resign theirs." To act and speak thus, without a struggle to be better than the rest of the world, is to be one of the kingdom which is, and so to resign the kingdom which is to come. No one will inherit that kingdom, unless he (e) *to prepare* himself for it; unless he (e) *to tear off* all he can of this world's fashion, and (e) *to put on* the wedding garment for the feast of immortality; unless he (e) *to cease* to conform himself to a state of things which is passing away, and (e) *to hold* himself ready for that higher and better state which shall last for ever.

---

☞ Complete the following sentences by inserting proper prepositions. Accidence (No. 6) lii.; Principles (II. 278, 279), page 152.

\* Concerning the Exercises which follow, up to the note at page 55, the teacher is referred to a recommendation contained in that note.



## KEY, page 18.

(1.) The older our habits, the greater the difficulty... changing them. We find little difficulty...changing new habits: they are as garments which, by loosening a tie or a button, we can put off when we have no occasion... them. But every day fastens a habit more strongly...us, and renders us less capable...not complying...our inclinations, whether good or bad.

(2.) When Hope founds her edifice of bliss...the sands...this world, and not...the rock...eternity, we should beware...confiding...her promises. The pleasures which we are resolved...seizing, will fly...us as we pursue, and so we shall be disappointed...them; or if they come...our grasp, we shall be disappointed...them, because they change the shapes which they seemed to have...a distance, the hues...which fancy had dressed them, the qualities...which the imagination had given them credit. We find, perhaps, when we get the promised good, that we have lost our relish...it, or that, after having had a short taste...it, our enjoyment ceases.

(3.) Man's life is,...the most part, a tissue of error and inconsistency. If some fathers lay good advice...their sons, the sons neglect to profit...it; and a mean compliance...customs which we acknowledge not to be in unison...our high duty, is everywhere remarkable. Our prejudice...everything that is contrary...our habits, is notorious; yet we take no pains to reduce such prejudice...the control of reason, or to conquer our abhorrence...what is really good. If we sometimes think...our faults, and speak well...points connected...our improvement, yet we act as usual, valuing ourselves...some acts varnished...specious names, and deeming it no derogation...our fancied merit, that, as we grow older, we do not grow better. And this manner...life goes...till we die, probably not...old age, but...some act or habit...intemperance.

(4.) Sleeping...the 20th...London, we started, my dear Charles,...Paris...day-break next morning, and arrived...Dover...four...the afternoon. ...an hour's stay, we embarked...a sailing vessel...twenty tons, which

carried us...the channel...two hours. We landed... Calais, which, you know, is opposite...Dover. We then took our seats...the Diligence; a vehicle well adapted... such sleepy people as we then were, but not adapted... travel very fast. Our lumbering conveyance kept on... the whole night, so that we passed...many places...seeing them; nor were we wide awake when they told us we were ...Abbeville, and that breakfast was ready...us...stairs ...the inn we had reached. I soon alighted and ran... stairs, and made my first essay...good purpose...a French meal. I then looked... window...the street, and wondered...the difference...it, and the street...an English town; though there seemed a resemblance... what I saw...some other place I had seen. But we were soon...our journey again, and arrived here...Paris...ten last night. To-morrow we go...the Louvre: you know I have a taste...pictures, which doubtless will be gratified ...the celebrated collection there. But, my dear Charles, when shall I get a taste...an English beef-steak again?

(5.) People are indebted...their abilities partly as derived...nature, but,...general, much more...ability derived...education. And we see as much variety...abilities as...faces. One man abounds...ready expedients; another seems unacquainted...any. One is expert ...everything; another is capable...nothing. Many are adepts...trifling or indifferent arts, but wholly destitute...knowledge important...their well-being...this life, and the preparation...happiness...the next.

(6.) True politeness does not consist...smooth expressions, but is dependent...the sterling qualities...the heart. Plain and blunt, words...certain circumstances, do not militate...it. We turn, ...something like loathing,...a person who never speaks but...terms like these: "I accede...all your wishes, and comply...all your demands; I aspire...nothing but your good graces, and blush...my own inferiority; I am charmed...your goodness; and, though sorry to intrude...your valuable time, shall profit ...the liberty you allow me...calling...you frequently, and inquiring...your health:...the mean time, rely...my being the most faithful ...your servants, and trust...my uniform obedience...all your commands." Language

which runs entirely...this strain, cannot be compatible... honesty. ...the other hand, our expressions must not be copied:...those...which the naturally rude indulge their moroseness: "I am tired...your company, and disgusted...your talk: I cannot acquiesce...anything you propose, nor concur...you...your opinions: I am not at all concerned...falling...your displeasure; and, if you refuse all further correspondence. .me, I shall not grieve...your decision, but console myself...a better companion: you may insinuate your opinions...minds...which you have an influence, and not obtrude them...me, who care neither...you nor...your maxims: again I say, that I take no pride...knowing you, nor pleasure...hearing you talk."

(7.) My friend had no abhorrence...economy; but, while ready to accommodate himself...all possible changes, he insisted on living up...his means, and according...his actual circumstances. He therefore kept a good table...accordance...his income. He liked frequent alterations...his bill of fare, and frequent additions...it. Good wine was not incompatible...his creed: he blushed, indeed, ...those persons who misused it, but he did not blush...the extra glass which welcomed a friend. His family consisted...his wife, two children, and...four servants, all expert...their several duties. He was familiar...his whole neighbourhood; nor were their tables less familiar...him. He had his private hours...which they never intruded; and he inculcated...his family the propriety...never making impertinent visits. Hence he lived...unison...people, who often disagreed...each other; whose differences he was ever ready to lend his hand...reconciling, and...whose little failings and faults he was ever indulgent.

---

☛ *Complete the following sentences by inserting proper conjunctions.*—Accidence li. Principles II. x. iii. page 153.

KEY, page 21.

(1.) John...Joseph intend to accompany me.—John... Joseph intends to accompany me.—Both John...Joseph are to be my companions.—Either John...Joseph is to be

my companion.—Whether both John...Joseph are to go, or whether John...Joseph is to be left behind, I cannot say.—I am told that...John...Joseph is to go: John is not to go,...he is lame;...Joseph is not to go,...he should get lame.

(2.) We should read history,...not without help from chronology...geography:...our impression of facts will be wrong,...at best confused...we know not when...where they happened...existed. Suppose, for instance, we read...four great empires engrossed, in turn, the ancient world:—...we inquire neither when they respectively flourished,...from what central place the sway of each began...extended, the value to the understanding of the fact so learned, can be but little.

(3.) Thomas was selfish, surly, and pedantic,...his manner of speaking sufficiently showed. "I do not care," he would often say, "...you like it,...not; I will do it...it is my pleasure to do it; and...you implore me till doomsday, you will not change my purpose." Then his style of argument ran thus: "Every one who differs from me, is either a rogue...a fool;...you differ from me;...you are...a rogue or a fool: now...you are a rogue, you deserve to be whipped;...you are a fool, you deserve to be scouted;...you deserve to be either whipped...scouted."

---

## SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

### NOTE PRELIMINARY.

Grammar has been so confounded with Logic and Rhetoric, branches of learning practically connected with, yet theoretically distinct from it, that it is impossible to adopt any order of grammatical exercises, without running into one or the other of two evils,—either that of offending true theory by following old tracks; or of offending those who think there can be no proper procedure which moves out of them. The previous exercises on tenses of verbs, on prepositions, and conjunctions, are put under the general head, Etymology, and not under Syntax as they are usually placed, for this reason, that Syntax, or in other words the laws of concord and government in construction, have nothing to do with accuracy of meaning in the use of a tense, with the appropriateness of a preposition at a particular place, or the signification of a conjunction when sentences are to be united. Even where these exercises are placed, namely

under Etymology, it may be doubted, (unless we use the term in its larger application, to include the derivation, and consequently the meaning of the words used,) whether their position accords with a strict theoretical view of the province of grammar. At all events, it is recommended to the teacher, to defer the exercises commencing at page 51, and terminating at this note, till the pupil shall have acquired some tact in the delicacies of language, which transcend mere grammatical correctness,—till, for instance, he come to consider in what manner sentences may be logically or rhetorically defective, while they comply with all the rules of grammatical construction; of which sorts of defective sentences, some are given by way of example toward the end of this Manual.

In proceeding to the next head, "Syntactical Parsing," it is deemed right to forewarn the teacher and learner, on grounds already asserted, that the distinction is adopted in compliance with custom only, and not from any belief that it is warranted by just theory. There can be no parsing which is not syntactical; because we cannot, on proper grounds, pronounce that a word is one part of speech, or another, till we see how it unites with other words in forming the whole construction. However, as no practical benefit needs be sacrificed in following the old track, the distinction is adopted; since it will simply require the pupil to say in words, what he must already have understood in etymological parsing, unless he repeated his lessons like a parrot. He will merely have to add, that such a verb agrees with such a nominative, such an adjective with such a substantive; that such a preposition governs such an objective; and so forth. A very few exercises need be given for trying him on these points: if more be required, he can go back to the former exercises, (page 18, et seq.) and, repeating at each instance what he said before, add in words the further knowledge he was not then called upon to declare.

---

## EXERCISES IN SYNTACTICAL PARSING,

*The parts to be distinguished being mere grammatical parts\*.*

### MODEL EXAMPLES.

Merry John laughs heartily.

Merry: an adjective (state how compared, &c., as in Etymological parsing), agreeing with the substantive *John*.

John: a noun-substantive (state the person and number), nominative to the verb *laughs*.

Laughs: a verb neuter (state whether regular or irregular; state also

\* In contradistinction to logical parts. Grammatical analysis, on the true principles of language, yet remains to be shown. See hereafter at the end of the Exercises in Syntax, and before those on Punctuation, page 101.

the mood, the tense, the person, the number), agreeing with its nominative *John*.

Heartily : an adverb agreeing with the verb.

He lives happy. He lives happily.

He : a personal pronoun (state, &c.), nominative to the verb *lives*.

Lives : a verb neuter (state, &c.), agreeing with its nominative *he*.

Happy : an adjective agreeing with *he*.

Happily : an adverb agreeing with the verb.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

She seems amiable. She smiles amiably. The poet grew great. The plant grew greatly. He fell prostrate. He fell frightfully. Knowledge is delightful. Knowledge is power\*. Knowledge is from Heaven. Knowledge is abroad. Knowledge is advancing. Knowledge is obtained.

Perseverance obtains success. Steady perseverance generally obtains complete success. Thomas loves Jane. Brother Thomas dearly loves sister Jane. Letters gave intelligence. William's letters yesterday gave joyful intelligence. He saved her. He and she providentially saved him and her.

Him and them we know, but you are strangers to us. Low company I advise you to avoid. Pleasure he professed to pursue, but he gained sorrow. He whom I relieved became my enemy. Him whom I relieved I afterwards persecuted. Him who offends I will take care to punish.

It was I who told you. He erected a pillar, which may still be seen. They to whom we owe our learning, deserve our warmest gratitude. The person whom you conversed with, is my cousin. I have lost the bird which you were so fond of. The tree which you used to shelter yourself under, is cut down.

It was not I whom (or that) he was so displeased with. It was not with me that he was so displeased†. Thee

\* *Power*, a noun-substantive agreeing with knowledge by apposition with it,—by means of the neuter verb.

† This may of course be transposed: "It was not me that he was so displeased with." Both constructions, namely the previous sentence and the present one thus transposed, are correct, by explaining *that* as a relative pronoun in one, and as a mere conjunction in the other.

whom he once highly esteemed, he now vents his bitterest anger against. William the best boy in the school, this handsome present is justly intended for.

Who can say that he is completely happy? Whom was he so very eager to serve? Whom did he speak to? Which shall I ask for? What do you require? Whom I am instructed by, them I reverence. I reverence them who instruct me.

If he go thither, bid him take care that he behave properly. Unless she amend, she will incur universal reproach. When he comes, if circumstances be favourable, I will begin the enterprise. He would relieve you, if he knew of your distress. If there were a guard set, the fruit might be saved. If he saw you, he would be angry.

If bad men are prosperous in the world, it does not follow that they are happy. Though I detest his vices, I feel for the man. Though he admires her beauty, he laughs at her silliness. Unless you saw him yesterday, you are not likely to see him to-day. Though I forgave the injury, I have not forgotten it. Macbeth might have been a good man, if he had not listened to evil counsel.

☞ *For other examples, go back to all those that served the purpose of etymological parsing, pages 18-28.*

*The Exercises in Punctuation, in a subsequent part of this Manual, may also be used with advantage as Exercises in Parsing.*

#### EXERCISES IN SYNTAX.

CONCORD, PRIN. (III. 2), page 163.

☞ *Correct the errors in the following: (KEY, page 22).*

He dare not do it.—Thou knows I paid thee.—Each must go to their place.—He which is now coming, is my friend.—These sort of people will never succeed.—It was him and not her.—He writes very bad.—There was an often return of the fit.

GOVERNMENT, PRIN. (III. 3), page 163.

☞ *Correct the errors in the following : (KEY, page 22).*

My sisters shawl and my two brothers hats, were mislaid by the servant-mens negligence.—I spoke to thou and not she.—He and they we know; but who are you?—He wishes you do not come.—Mary would be pretty, if she was good humoured.—He came to hither in an hour, and walked to thither in half an hour.—He came here &c., and walked there, &c.

---

CONCORD—*continued.*

NOUN AND VERB, PRIN. (III. 4), page 164.

☞ *Join the noun and verb in each of the following :*

MODEL EXAMPLES.

I, to be weary.	That business, *to give much trouble.
I am weary.	That business gave much trouble.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 22).

Thou, to tremble.—She, to know nothing.—We, to have never believed you.—Alexander, \*to conquer the Persians.—Rain, may to fall before night.—Thou, can not to lift this weight.—George, to be going on a journey.—Thou, \*to be ever obstinate.—Men, to be born only to die.—Pride, not \*to be made for man.—Charity, to cover a multitude of sins.—Thou, \*to have not dined when I called.

---

☞ *Correct the false concord in the following :*

KEY, page 23.

She need not come.—You was much in fault.—Of these professions, each are crowded.—Two were ordered, but neither were sent.—That I paid thee, thou can but be well aware.—The flock are grazing.—The fleet were arrived.—The nation are powerful.—On that point, thou spoke

\* The verbs preceded by an asterisk are to be put into the preterit tense.



falsely.—The army are marching hither.—My wages is due.—The church have no power to inflict corporal punishment.—The committee are formed of men differing in opinion.—This generation vainly ask for greater evidence.—A multitude are assembled to witness the ceremony.—The crowd were dispersed by the magistrates.

---

✎ *Join the logical nominative and the verb in each of the following, so that the verb shall agree with the mere grammatical nominative, which is capable of being detached from the logical.* Accidence, page xxxv. Principles (III. 65), page 192.

#### MODEL EXAMPLE.

The number of the inhabitants. not to exceed a million.

Here, the mere grammatical nominative, detached from the logical, is *number*, and this being a noun singular, the verb must agree with it in the third person singular:

The number of the inhabitants does not exceed a million.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 23).

The goodness of my friends, to demand my warmest gratitude.—The presence of so many persons, to be favourable for the object in view.—Variety in all things he sees, to fill him with great delight.—The fame of this person, and of his wonderful works, \*to be diffused throughout the country.—The multiplicity of the instruments which form the machine, to be the most wonderful part of it.—Every duty which the several offices he filled required of him, \*to be met with sedulous attention.

---

✎ *Correct the false concord in the following :*

KEY, page 23.

The renewal of hopes which shone on past days, give consolation.—Fifty pounds of wheat contains forty pounds of flour.—The mechanism of clocks and watches were unknown to the ancients.—A flock of sheep peacefully grazing, present a pleasant sight. The British Parliament,

\* The verbs preceded by an asterisk are to be put into the preterit tense.

composed of the sovereign, the lords, and the commons, demand the obedience of the subjects of this realm.—The assembly, collected from men of every denomination, were soon distracted by the variety of opinions opened in the debate.—An army of peasants without a general, were not likely to withstand the disciplined troops of an experienced leader.—He saw at once, that the collection of valuable things now in view of the thieves, were not likely to escape their rapacious grasp.—My library of choice books, my solace during captivity, are now in danger of being carried piecemeal away, for want of a proper guard.—A multitude composed of different sects, were assembled to hear the preacher.—Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits, delight some persons.—So much both of ability and merit, are seldom found. In the conduct of Parmenio, a mixture of wisdom and folly were very conspicuous.—All the power of ridicule, aided by the desertion of friends, and the diminution of his funds, were not able to shake his principles.—A people of barbarous manners were found in the interior.

---

✎ *Join the logical nominative and the verb in each of the following, so that the verb shall agree with the sense, singular or plural, of such logical nominative. Principles (III. 66), page 192, and (89), page 206.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLE.

To rise early in the morning, to be conducive to health.

Here the logical nominative does not supply a mere grammatical nominative which can be detached from it. The verb must therefore be made to agree with the sense of the logical nominative; and as, in this instance, the sense is singular, the verb must agree with it in the third person singular.

To rise early in the morning is conducive to health.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 24).

To live soberly, righteously, and piously, to be required of all men.—Seeing with one's own eyes, seldom to fail to bring conviction.—To steal with one hand, and give largely with the other, not to deserve to be called generosity.—That he was greatly in fault, plainly to appear even from his own statement.—Living within one's in-

come, to be the best way of keeping a safe purse.—To make full use of our eyes and ears, to converse with well-informed persons, to read instructive books, and to meditate on what we hear and read,—to comprehend the chief means of growing wise.

---

✎ *Correct the false concord in the following :*

KEY, page 24.

To do unto all men as we would that they, in similar circumstances, should do to us, constitute the great principle of virtue.—From a fear of the world's censure, to be afraid of the practice of precepts which the heart approves and embraces, mark a feeble and imperfect character.—To pronounce words according to good usage, to utter every component sound completely, and to join the sounds forming clauses as closely as we join the sounds of any single word, comprises the first requisites of a good delivery.—That it is our duty to assist others in distress, to be gentle in demeanour, considerate in our actions, and modest in our pretensions, are admitted by every moralist.—Giving way to low excesses, taking no care to retrieve his health when impaired, living in idleness from day to day, and so avoiding all wholesome exercise, is quite sufficient to account for his present deplorable state.

---

✎ *Join the noun of multitude and the verb in each of the following.* Principles (III. 88), page 205.

#### MODEL EXAMPLE.

People, to be dissatisfied with the measure.

Here the noun *people*, though in form singular, is a noun of multitude, and like every other *real* noun of this kind, requires a verb plural.

People are dissatisfied with the measure.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 25).

In the days of youth, the multitude eagerly, to pursue pleasure.—The public, to be admitted gratuitously.—My people, not to consider.

✎ *Correct the false concord in the following :*

KEY, page 25.

Mankind has arisen from one head.—In that country, the peasantry goes barefoot.—The public has no right to walk in these grounds.—The multitude is hungry, and has nothing to eat.—People is never wanting to join in the wildest enterprise.—The virtuous is to be rewarded ; the vicious is sure to be punished.—Youth too often thinks that they have no need of assistance.—Folk was seen in all parts of the field.

---

✎ *Join the noun singular, or the noun of multitude, and the verb in each of the following, so that the verb (in the present if without an asterisk, in the preterit if with one,) shall be consistent with the meaning of the sentence taken as a whole. Principles (III. 88), page 205.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

The fleet, to be all arrived.

No people, to be ever so stubborn as that nation.

Here, in the first example, the noun *fleet*, regarded by itself, is a noun singular, but the context forces us to understand a plural, and consequently the noun *fleet* no longer has its proper meaning, but signifies the ships of the fleet. In the second example, the noun *people*, regarded by itself, is a noun of multitude, but the context forces us to understand a singular, and consequently the noun *people* no longer has its proper meaning, but signifies a collective whole made up of people.

The fleet are all arrived.

No people was ever so stubborn as that nation.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 25).

The flock, erewhile grazing in every part of the plain, now, in all directions,—\*to be seen coming, one after another, toward the shepherd.—An industrious people, to be sure to prosper.—Of the races on earth, mankind, to stand conspicuous above the others, by the endowment of reason.—Being routed, the army, at present nothing more than men without a leader,—to be likely to be all destroyed one by one.—I do not think that the committee, to be unanimous.

✎ *Correct the false concord in the following :*

KEY, page 25.

Of the people there assembled, the majority was a set of men without principles.—So honest a peasantry are deserving of more honour than any race of nobility that history records.—In that country, the middle sort wears wooden shoes.—The family is dying off very fast, one after another.—The fair sex is not generally called upon to mingle in the labours of public life.—The male sex are distinguished by greater depth of thought ; the female, by greater delicacy of feeling.—The committee was divided in their sentiments.—He reported that the crowd, some creeping one way, some another, was seen making way to their several homes.—Resolved, that this meeting approves of the plan, and that they will forward it in every possible way.—The regiment of veterans was all drawn up in the grand square.

✎ *Join the nouns and the verb, in each of the following, as the sense requires ; that is to say, if the singular nominatives are meant to be taken severally, that is, as singulars with the verb, then the verb must be singular ; but if they are meant to be taken in the aggregate, that is, as a plural, then the verb must be plural. Principles (III. 84), page 199.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

My friend to-day, and his brother to-morrow, to be to preside.  
My friend and his brother, to be to preside.

Here, in the first example, *my friend* and *his brother* must, according to the sense of the whole sentence, be understood as separate nominatives to the verb ; but in the second example, the same subjects must be understood as forming a plural nominative to the verb.

My friend to-day, and his brother to-morrow, is to preside.  
My friend and his brother are to preside.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 26).

The old man during this year, and his son during the next,—to be to hold the office of chief magistrate.—The old man and his son, to be to hold the two chief offices.—

Ignorance and negligence, to have caused this mistake.—  
 Ignorance or negligence, to have caused this mistake.

✎ *Correct the false concord in the following :*

KEY, page 26.

First, spring,—then, summer,—and then, autumn,—come, with a grateful vicissitude, to visit us.—Spring, summer, and autumn, comes to visit us in turn.—Man's happiness and misery depends much on himself.—Man's happiness or misery depend much on himself.—Neither threat nor promise were able to stop him.—Cold and heat is indifferent to him.—Cold or heat are indifferent to him.—When sickness, infirmity, or reverse of fortune, affect us, the sincerity of friendship is proved.—To profess regard and act differently discover unworthiness of character.—To profess regard, and to act differently, constitutes a too common kind of treachery.

✎ *In the following, which require that the verb shall agree with the separate nominatives, but with which, unless repeated after each, it cannot with each grammatically agree, join the verb in the plural, when a plural nominative is present ; in the first person, when a nominative of the first person is present ; in the second person, when a nominative of the second person is present ; and in the third person, when only nominatives of the third person are present : but place next to it, if possible, the nominative with which the verb grammatically agrees.—Principles (III. 85), page 200.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

We or he, to be in error.  
 Thou, I, or she, to be to be appointed.  
 Thou or she, to be to be appointed.  
 He or we are in error.  
 Thou, she, or I am to be appointed.  
 She or thou art to be appointed.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 26).

He or they, to deserve censure.—Thou or we, to have authority in this matter.—He or thou, to be appointed to

the office.—Thou or he, to be to be the leader.—I or thou, to have committed this error.

✍ *Correct the false concord in the following, re-arranging the nominatives if necessary.*

KEY, page 26.

Thou, I, or the constable, are to be called up in order to be reprimanded.—We or he is guilty.—Neither I nor thou art the man that will be chosen.—I do not think that either I or he is fit for the office.—The dangers that will accompany the enterprise, or the previous opposition to it, is likely to prevent it altogether.—Either thou or I art greatly mistaken.—I or thou am the person to undertake the business.—Both of the scholars, or one of them at least, was present at the transaction.—Neither the sailors nor the captain was saved.—Whether one person or more was concerned in the business, does not yet appear.—The cares of this life, or the deceitfulness of riches, has destroyed the seeds of virtue in many a promising mind.—My cousins William and Frederick, or else Frederick by himself, is coming to visit us.—First I, and then George, and then my brother James, is to be monitor.

✍ *Recollecting the several varieties of false concord between nominative and verb thus far noted, and also bearing in mind that the nominative with which the verb is to agree, very often comes after it, correct the false concord in the continuing examples which follow.*

KEY, page 27.

How does William and his father do?—How do William, with so many persons to obstruct him, contrive to proceed?—Thus arises, from the cause I have stated, the many difficulties of the enterprise.—Has thou no better reason for thy censure?—Just now, there was Tom and Harry here, who came to call us.—Here is John and I to assist you.—What avails the best sentiments, if we do not live up to them?—There were appointed, at that time, either a secretary or an overseer.—What signifies the counsel and care of preceptors, when youth think they have no

need of assistance?—Where was the prudence and foresight of the man on that fatal occasion?—Presently were seen a dreadful precipice, with no means of escaping from it.—Among the pleasures of life, is to be reckoned exercise in the open air, and the sound sleep that it ensures.—Here are William, John, or I, ready to be your advocate.—From what funds are thy brother or thou to be supplied?—Never were a people so much infatuated.—There is, between the smile he would aspire to, the sweet aspect of princes and his ruin, more pangs and fears than war or women have.—How was William, George, or thou, likely to succeed singly in this undertaking?—Whence does mere pleasure of sense, or, in other words, the luxuries of life, derive power to overcome the better propensities of the soul?—Here is my father's fields, and there are the house: on this side appears the well-known cedar-trees, and there are the pasture with its cows and sheep.—There have happened, since you were here, a number of sad accidents.—What signifies her clamours, or what avails her entreaties?—Here were a number of people collected.—Come thou with hundreds, and here is men that will face thee.—Happy are the flock that I here see grazing!—Here appear a great multitude of trees.—Suddenly springs from ambush twenty men completely armed.—Here lieth the remains of my beloved friend.—Here repose that which death has left of my dear relation.

---

#### CONCORD OF NOMINATIVES IN APPPOSITION.

*Nominatives in immediate apposition.* Accidence, page xxix, 2; and Prin. (III. 7), page 165.

✍ *Correct the false concord in the following:*

KEY, page 28.

Brutus, him that repelled Tarquin, not him that joined with others to assassinate Cæsar, was a patriot that used legitimate means to rescue his country from tyranny.—Queen Mary, she that bore the sceptre with her husband, William of Nassau, not her who preceded Elizabeth, was a Protestant princess.—Us, the mayor and corporation of



this city, do require prompt attention to this our injunction.—The silly wicked boys that did this, them that painted out the poor man's sign, and called it fun, shall surely be exposed and punished.

---

*Concord of nouns in apposition by means of a verb neuter, and of the verb with one or both of the nouns, according to the predominant sense of the whole context.*

✍ *Join the nouns with the verb in each of the following, in such a manner as to satisfy the claims of sense, with the least possible violence to grammar. Principles (III. 8), page 165 : also (91), page 208 : further illustrated at (86) page 201.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

It, to be I.—I, to be he.—They, to be to be the magistrate.—They, to be to be the council.—The wages of sin, to be death.—Curses, \*to be his only reward.—He occupation and chief delight, to be study.—It, to seem to be she.—Mathematics, to be a fine science.

It is I.—I am he.—They are to be the magistrates.—They are to be the council.—The wages of sin is death.—Curses were his only reward.—His occupation and chief delight is study.—It seems to be she.—Mathematics is a fine science.

---

✍ *Correct the false concord in the following :*

KEY, page 28.

It was me, and not him, that did it.—I know it could not have been her ; but whether or not it was them, I am not able to declare.—Was it possible to be them?—Whom do the people say that we are?—Ask him, whom he has been thought to be.—The Scriptures are them which testify of him.—His meat were locusts and wild honey.—The chapel and the hospital were all one building.—James and his brother is the appointed guard.—A great cause of the low state of industry, was the restraints put upon it.—Optics were the subject next introduced.—Shame and contumely were the end he came to.—It was thee whom I saw.—Thou was the person.—That regiment was veterans of tried bravery.—Fatigue and illness were his plea for

\* The verb to be in the preterit tense.

being absent.—Wast thou him that fled when the enemy was only twenty raw recruits?—The people say that we are him and her that came yesterday.—George was thought to be him that had applied.—Thou art not him whom they said that thou wast.—I should not like to be him.—To be us, the accusers, is surely better than to be them, the accused.—Intemperate living and late hours was the ruin of his health.—That which attracted his eyes, was the rays of the setting sun.—It was\* the martyrs of former days that established our religion.—His greatest concern and highest enjoyment, were to be approved in the sight of his Creator.

*Nominative in direct address.* Principles (III. 9), page 166.

✍ *Correct the errors in the following :*

KEY, page 29.

I implore thee to listen : hear me, thee who hast never yet been deaf to my call.—O ye mischief-makers ! hear me singly while I call you hither : thee, John, come this way, and await thy punishment : thee, Peter, come next : and thee, the last, not least in evil-doing, Harry, the most cunning of all, come and have thy due.—Christians, pray thus within yourselves : O Jesus ! impress thy law upon our hearts, to do as we would be done by.

*Nominative absolute.* Principles (III. 10), page 166.

✍ *Correct the errors in the following :*

KEY, page 29.

Mount Sinai shall tremble, him descending.—In the enterprise to ruin man, the devils deemed that, him destroyed by Satan, or won by Satan to do evil, the world would be given wholly up to their hellish sway.—I care not for others, them being on my side.—Us being appointed to the duty, you have no right to interfere.—He is determined, her being engaged to him by promise, not to allow of any rival in courtship.

\* In this instance, the pronoun included in the verb must partake of the correction.

Principles (III. 11), page 166.

KEY, page 29.

My banks they are furnished with bees.—This rule, if it had been observed, a neighbouring prince would not have been so much flattered.—Man, though he has great variety of thoughts, yet they are all within his own breast.—Two substantives, when they come together, and do not signify the same thing, the former must be in the possessive case.—Virtue, however it may be neglected for a time, men are so constituted as ultimately to acknowledge and respect genuine merit.—Charity to the poor, when governed by knowledge and prudence, there are no persons who will not admit it to be a virtue.

---

CONCORD—continued.

*Pronoun and noun.* Principles (III. 19–24), pp. 168–170.

Also (90,) page 208.

☞ *Instead of the numbered space, or instead of the numbered grammatical or logical noun in italic, put a suitable pronoun. The numbers correspond with the several classes of pronouns at page xxv of the Accidence.*

MODEL EXAMPLE.

John and James, <sup>3</sup> were chosen for this business, refused to act  
<sup>9</sup>*John with James, James with John*; and *John and James* <sup>1</sup>were accordingly dismissed.

John and James, who were chosen for this business, refused to act with each other; and they were accordingly dismissed.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. KEY, page 29.

A man and <sup>3</sup> wife <sup>5</sup> had never quarrelled, since  
<sup>1</sup> had been married, were going to claim the flitch of  
 bacon; and, on <sup>3</sup> way, considered what <sup>1</sup> should  
 do with <sup>1</sup> when <sup>1</sup> had <sup>1</sup>: the husband, <sup>3</sup>  
 was fond of feasting, said <sup>1</sup> would have <sup>1</sup> cooked,

and invite all <sup>3</sup> *the husband and wife's* friends to supper :  
 the wife, <sup>5</sup> was very thrifty, said <sup>1</sup> would keep  
 in store : <sup>1</sup> disputed till <sup>4</sup> quarrelled, and then re-  
 proached *the husband and the wife* for thus losing all  
 chance of the prize.—Poverty tempts to evil, and so does  
 wealth : <sup>7</sup> too often drives a man to dishonesty ;  
 still more frequently allures to selfish and criminal indul-  
 gence : the rich may therefore say to the poor, “ If <sup>2</sup> *your life*  
 is a life of trial, *our life* is so likewise ” : “ True,” the poor may  
 reply ; “ but <sup>1</sup> are tried by pain, <sup>1</sup> by <sup>6</sup> is  
 deemed pleasure : ” the religious teacher here interposes, and  
 says, “ A world is to come, in <sup>3</sup> *the world to come each man*  
 shall be dealt with according to <sup>3</sup> opportunities and  
 deserts, and the apparently uneven conditions of this world,  
 be equitably counterpoised.”—The religion, *the-religion* was  
 first <sup>3</sup> promulgated in Judea nearly two thousand years ago ;  
*the-religion* infidels, in every age, have in vain opposed ; to  
*the-religion* new adherents are still gathered during every  
 passing year ; *the-religion* will, as its professors believe,  
 finally embrace all the nations of the world,—is a religion  
 seeking peace on earth, and bringing good will to man.

Yourself\*, my brother, and I, are sent for ; and  
 must go immediately.—George and I are preparing  
 tasks ; but you and William are losing <sup>3</sup> time.—The  
 confederates and myself held a conference on <sup>3</sup> common  
 affairs.—Thou, and thy brother William, friend Martha,  
 and Simon Smith, will be summoned to state what  
 know of this matter, and <sup>1</sup> will be required to write  
 down <sup>3</sup> evidence.

\* See especially Principles (III. 20), page 169.

England\* expects every man to do<sup>3</sup> duty.—There were twenty females; and each had dressed<sup>4</sup> as finely as<sup>1</sup> could.—I walked with a person,<sup>5</sup> told me that<sup>1</sup> admired me very much.—My advice to each of you is, that<sup>1</sup> should be much more careful in future.—We are all inclined to sin; but<sup>1</sup> that wilfully sins, must be punished.

† John was naturally slothful and dilatory;<sup>5</sup> made him always behindhand.—My friend was just in time for dinner;<sup>5</sup> is what he promised to be.—The man walked thirty miles;<sup>5</sup> was enough to tire a horse.—You have done your duty; and<sup>7</sup> was all I required.—You have not yet prepared your task; and<sup>7</sup> is what you must do.

Thus spoke Charles on taking leave: “<sup>1</sup> regret, dear friends, that<sup>1</sup> must go; but<sup>1</sup> may be assured of return as soon as<sup>1</sup> obtain permission.”—William says that<sup>1</sup> does not rain now, though<sup>1</sup> came down in torrents a little while ago.—How easy<sup>1</sup> is to keep on good terms with a real friend!—Is<sup>1</sup> not strange that the book should be missing?—The committee are all assembled, and<sup>1</sup> will sit for two hours.—The company came in one by one, so that<sup>1</sup> could be easily counted.

---

✍ *Correct the false concord in the following:*

KEY, page 31.

The male among birds seems to discover no beauty, but in the colour of its species.—I do not think that any one

\* See especially Principles (III. 21), page 169.

† See especially Principles (III. 90), page 208.

should incur censure for being tender of their reputation.—The mind of man cannot be long without some food to nourish the activity of his thoughts.—I will see every sufferer, and do my utmost to relieve their distress.—The crowd was so great that I could not get through them.—My counsel to each of you, is, that you should make it your endeavour to come to a friendly agreement.—By discussing what relates to each particular in their order, we shall better understand the subject.—Nobody can see such distress, without striving to relieve it by every means in their power.—He instructed and fed the crowds who surrounded him.—He is like a beast of prey, who destroys without pity.—The court, who gives currency to manners, ought to be exemplary.—I live happy in the friend which I have long proved.—The worst kind of men, when it is in extremity, acknowledges its dependence on a Power unseen\*.—The babe whom we have just seen, is plump and healthy.—The men and things which he has studied, have not improved him.—The things and men whom he has studied, have not improved him.

Thou, and the gardener, and the huntsman, must share the blame of this business among them.—My sister and I, as well as my brother, are daily employed in their several occupations.—George and I, or else you and William, must set to work ; and you must work hard, or lose your labour.—The smith and the carpenter are at work ; but even with your help, you will not finish to-day.—Myself and two or three more, have engaged themselves to pay the debt.

The multitude were determined to have its own will.—The people rejoice in its iniquity.—The fair sex have its proper duties.—The house framed a remonstrance, in which it spoke too freely of the king's prerogative.—The whole regiment were seen throwing up its caps for joy.—A large company of women, all talking at once, with its flounces and ribbons waving, were met by a brown-suited, plainly-dressed set of men, who were very silent for a time, till it began to rebuke the troop of females for its levity : but the

\* When the logical correction is made, grammar will be outraged, unless the subject of the sentence is altered into—"Men of the worst kind."

troop of men were seduced from its grave demeanour, and went to change its dresses for gayer attire.

He paid twenty guineas ; which\* were too high a price.—He is careless of the means prescribed for his recovery ; which\* make his cure almost hopeless.—The prescribed days are almost spent ; which\* cause his great trepidation.—He is a man of less wisdom than words ; which\* are sure to be manifest, when, instead of speaking, it is necessary to act.—Henry the Sixth of England, was unfitted for the times he lived in ; which\* were the immediate cause of the wars of the Roses.

### CONCORD—continued.

*Definitive, and Word defined.* Principles (III. 25–31), page 170. Also (44), page 176.

✍ *Join, with change when proper concord requires, the following definitives with each word or phrase capable of being defined by it.*

### MODEL EXAMPLES.

This	{	able workman.
A		able workmen.
True		speeches.
		To speak.

This able workman. These able workmen. These speeches. An able workman. True speeches. To speak truly.

### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 32).

Good	{	manners.
		behaviour.
Well	{	he conducts himself.
		behaved people.
Speedy	{	assistance.
		he will arrive.
		completed works.

\* The relative having the same form for the plural as for the singular, the false concord is manifested in the verb. In the first example, the concord to be rectified is that between *which* and *price*. In the other examples, *which* stands for a logical singular, and therefore ought not to have a plural construction.

Exceeding	{	beauty. beautiful. generosity. generous.
A	{	kind. kinds.
That	{	ugly dog. useful book.
Another	{	heroic action. one-eyed animal.
Whose	{	man. men.
Which	{	horse. horses.
What	{	table. tables.
His	{	
A	{	pen.
A few*.	{	pens.
A thousand*	{	

↪ *Correct the false concord, or supply the absence of a proper definitive, in the following :*

KEY, page 32.

You must leave off these kind of indulgencies.—Instead of improving yourselves, you have been playing this two hours.—We must make up our minds to other day of hard toil.—Boy's face is often apt to want a good washing.—A boys' manners will often disgrace them.—I was waylaid by a man, who very man is now before me.—The punishment, rigour of which he tried to elude, is now sure to overtake him.—Many an one will suffer.—A hook is an useful thing to an one-armed man.—It was a harmonious meeting, and an united effort was resolved upon.—They poured the wine from an ewer, and, after having made a harangue, declared, with an unanimous voice, that the treaty was complete.

He was extreme prodigal, and his property is now near exhausted.—We may reason very clear and strong, without knowing that there is such a thing as a syllogism.—Con-

\* Principles (III. 71), page 193.



formably to their vehemence of thought, was their vehemence of gesture.—The conspiracy was the easier discovered, from its being known to many.—Use a little wine for thy stomach's sake, and thine often infirmities.—From these favourable beginnings, we may hope for a soon and prosperous issue.

Maria always appears amiably : she never speaks severe or contemptuous.—Indignantly at the affront, he utters his sentiments bold.—His boldly sentiments were uttered indignant.

---

☞ *Place the definitive in such arrangement with the word or phrase intended to be defined, that its purpose cannot be mistaken.* Principles (III. 62), page 189 : also (94), page 209.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

Not only : he saw her in health, but—  
handsome : ladies' bonnets.

Here the question in the first example is, whether it is meant to be said, that "He not only *saw* her in health, but," perhaps, "*heard* her say she was so." Or, "He saw her not only in *health*, but," perhaps, "*pleased* and *tranquil* also." And the adverbial definitive must be placed differently as above, according to the meaning in view. In the second example the question is, whether the bonnets are for handsome ladies, or whether they are handsome bonnets for ladies. If the latter is the meaning, the adjective, in order to be clear of doubt, must be placed thus : Ladies' handsome bonnets.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 33).

	{	Thomas spoke.
		When you are merry, am I glad.
Only :		When you are merry, I fear that your spirits may afterwards sink.
		Reformation is to be begun and effected by the higher classes.
Certainly :		No promise is offered by others.
Alone :		You may confide in him.
New :		A pair of shoes.
Dirty :		A man's hat.

---

☞ *Improve the position of the definitive adverb or adjective in the following: and, where any occurs, correct the grammatical false concord.*

KEY, page 33.

He was pleasing not often.—My opinion was given rather on a cursory perusal of the book.—It is too common with mankind to be engrossed and overcome totally by present events.—William nobly acted.—It was an act noble.—Not only he found me occupied, but well occupied.—Spirits not being in casks containing twenty gallons, are liable to the retail duty.—He spoke in a distinct enough manner to be heard by the whole assembly.—Thomas is equipped with a new pair of shoes, and a new pair of gloves: he is the servant of an old rich man.—The two first in the row are cherry-trees; the two others are pear-trees.—These kind of games must be pernicious both to body and mind.—Where have you been this three hours?—Those sort of favours did real injury.—Where are you going?—Whither have you been staying?—He went there in an hour.—He remained thither during a whole day.\*

GOVERNMENT—*continued from page 59.*

*One noun governed by another; namely, the former of two nouns governed by the latter in the possessive case. Principles (III. 12–14), page 167.*

☞ *Join the following nouns properly, so that the latter may govern the former in the possessive case.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

John: father.

My parents: kindness.

St. Paul: church.

Mine: duty.

Yours: prudence.

John's father. My parents' kindness. St. Paul's church. My duty. Your prudence.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 34).

A woman: delicacy.

Women: vanity.

\* See Accidence (Table No. 5), pages li., lii. (at the end of the Table).

A girl: industry.  
 Girls: bonnets.  
 Hers: shawl.  
 His: hat.  
 It: place.  
 Yours: apology.

---

✎ *Correct the errors in the following :*

KEY, page 34.

My ancestors virtue is not mine.—His brothers offence will not condemn him.—I will not destroy the city for ten sake.—A mothers tenderness and a fathers care, are natures gifts for mans advantage.—A mans manner's frequently influence his fortune.—Wisdoms precept's form the good mans interest and happiness.—Moses rod was turned into a serpent.—For Herodias sake, his brother Philips wife.—St. Peters at Rome is a magnificent edifice.—Mine horse is good, but Williams is better.—Yours exercise cannot be compared to Elizas.—How far is it from St. Brides to St. Martins?—Your's is better than her's; but his', when properly viewed, seems best of all.

---

Principles (III. 69), page 193.

KEY, page 34.

Such will ever be the effect of youth associating with vicious companions.—The consequence of George leaving his family, will soon arrive.—The king had doubts about the lawfulness of the *Hollanders* throwing off the monarchy of Spain.—I will not for David's, thy father's sake.—It was the men's women's and children's lot to suffer great calamities.—Not only the counsel's and attorney's, but the judge's opinion favoured his cause.—What can be the cause of the committee having delayed this business?—It was the anniversary of King William's and Queen Mary's accession.—The house was Joseph's and Robert's property.—The captain's and mate's, as well as the seamen's exertions, brought the vessel into harbour.—The judge and jury's sentiments were at variance.

---

## GOVERNMENT—continued.

*Noun governed by an active verb, or by a preposition, in the objective case.* Principles (III. 16–18), page 168, also Principles (III. 46, 47), page 177.

✎ *Construct the following materials, so that in each example there shall be proper government by the verb active, or by the preposition, of the noun or pronoun indicated for the objective by being printed in italics.*

## MODEL EXAMPLES.

I, to tell, *thou*. He, to reward, *they*; who, to work hard.  
She, to turn from, *all*; *who*, you, to recommend.

I tell thee. He rewards them who work hard.  
She turns from all whom you recommend.

## EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 35).

The book, to seem to please, *thou*.—He, to love, *she*.—She, to dislike, *he*.—We, to invite, *ye*.—Ye, to receive, *we*.—I, to praise, *they*; who, to excel. Thou, to console, *I*; *who*, she, to have grieved.—We, to speak to, *they*.—She, to go from, *I*.—They, to agree with, *thou*.—We, to give only to, *they*; for, *who*, the benefit, to be intended.—He *who*, you, to speak to, to know, *she*, *who* you, to be seeking for.—He, to be forgetful of, *I*, by, *who*, he, to be supported.—I, will never to seek to ingratiate, *they*, by traducing, *he*.—I have noted down some remarks, and shall, to premise, *they*.

✎ *Correct the defects of government in the following:*

KEY, page 35.

They who are rendered proud by opulence, and corrupt by luxury, nature makes incapable of relishing simple pleasures.—They who opulence has made proud, and who luxury has corrupted, cannot relish the simple pleasures of nature.—He I have reason to love, but not thou.—Who ought we to love, if not our parents?—Thou who wast dead, hath he quickened.—I knew ye both.—She that is idle and mischievous, reprove sharply.—He invited my brother and I to examine his library.—He who committed

the offence you should correct, not I who am innocent.—They who he had most injured, he had the greatest reason to love.—I could not avoid considering, in some degree, they as enemies to me, and he as a suspicious friend.—Whatever others do, let thou and I act wisely.—Omitting only they, he invited all his kinsfolk.—He welcomed whomsoever came.\* — Whosoever† I catch, shall be punished.—We who merit his respect, he speaks to as if we were rogues.—Who do you address such language to? —He laid the suspicion upon somebody, I know not who, in the company.—He and she, of all persons in the world, I determined that I would have nothing to do with.—What concord can subsist between people who commit crimes, and they who abhor them?—He whom I now leave in my place, I shall first inquire for on my return.—Who are you preparing that present for?—I answer, not for you, but she.—I hope it is not with I that he is displeased.—I hope it is not I who he is displeased with.—We should fear and obey the Author of our being, even He who has power to reward or punish us for ever.—The money was paid to a clerk; he who sits at yonder desk.—He punished William and John; they who had been the ringleaders.—At first sight, I took your sister to be she that I had previously spoken to.—To my good friend, he who has been my guardian from my youth upward, I dedicate this memorial.—From thee, a bitter enemy, thou who art incapable of kindness, I expect no mercy.—Who did you consider them to be?

---

Principles (III. 53), page 180.

KEY, page 36.

O! happy we, surrounded by so many blessings!—Miserable I! which way shall I escape despair?—Ah! unhappy thee, deaf to the calls of honour!—Joyful them! the bringers of good tidings to their best friends!—O thee hypocrite! how darest thou attempt to pass for pious?

\* Prin. (III. 70), page 193.

† This pronoun is not by itself a nominative, though it forms, with the verb that ought to govern it, a logical nominative to the verb which completes the sentence.

## GOVERNMENT—continued.

*Government of a verb in the infinitive, including its shape of participle, imperfect or perfect. Principles (III. 37–40), pages 174, 175.*

✎ *Join, with proper government, the infinitive verb in the second column to the finite verb opposite to it in the first.*

## MODEL EXAMPLES.

I wish :	be at rest,
You are (verb prin.):	play for an hour.
You are (verb aux.):	play instead of studying.
They have much (verb prin.):	learn.
They have (verb aux.):	learn much.
I am able :	go.
I can :	to go.
He is (verb aux.):	teach pupils (part. imperfect).
He is (verb aux.):	teach (part. perfect).

I wish to be at rest. You are to play for an hour. You are playing, instead of studying. They have much to learn. They have learned much. I am able to go. I can go. He is teaching pupils. He is taught.

## EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 36).

I have (aux.):	finish my task.
You have (prin.):	cross the mountain before night.
He will not :	to do wrong.
We shall not :	to have finished our supper.
We all wish :	be happy.
I have been (aux.):	tease him all the morning (part. imperfect).
I have been (aux.):	tease by him all the morning (part. perfect).
They need :	to take care of themselves.
He dares :	not to do it.
I will make him :	to repent.
I see him :	to come.

✎ *Correct the defects of government in the following :*

KEY, page 36.

It is better live on a little, than outlive a great deal.—  
You ought not walk too hastily.—You need not, on any  
account, to walk so fast.—I wish him not wrestle with his

happiness.—I dare not to proceed in this matter.—It is the difference of their conduct, which makes us to approve the one, and to reject the other.—Eager going, I took my leave with a laudable anxiety being in time.—Determined not be outdone, he tried and succeeded.—The will doing, is more often absent than the way.—He was write a letter when I called.—I am try to do what you asked me do.—He was teach his scholars, and these were diligently attend to his instruction.—I am instructed you; you are instructing by me.—If some events had not fell out very unexpectedly, I should have been present.—He would have went with us, had he been invited.—He returned the goods he had stole.—They have chose an honourable part.—His vices have broke his health.—He has mistook his true interest.—No new contentions have arose among them.—The French language is spoke in every state in Europe.—He has not yet wore off the rough manners which he brought with him.—He has forsook his best friend.—That excellent book was wrote by a hand, that had never wrote well before.—This tree has not throve since it was transplanted.—You have not drank your wine.—He has laid here all the morning, and will not get up.

---

#### GOVERNMENT—continued.

*Government of a verb in the Subjunctive Mood.* Principles (III. 86), page 173.

☞ *Complete the following sentences, by putting the verbs in italic into the Subjunctive Mood, those with the asterisk into the preterit-present tense.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

Take care that thou *to infringe not* the law.  
 If he *to be\** to ask them, they would not consent.  
 Take care that thou *infringe not* the law.  
 If he were to ask them, they would not consent.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 37).

If he *to come*, he must be made welcome.—They will pay at Christmas unless it *to be* inconvenient.—Though the enterprise *to do not to* succeed, we shall not regret

attempting it.—If thou *to be\** to ask him, he would not grant the request.—Though he *to be\** ever so rich, such extravagance would soon make him poor.

☞ *Improve or correct the government in the following, observing that the verbs in italic are not incorrect, but proper for the ordinary style, though they can be improved for the grave or formal style.*

KEY, page 37.

If he *acquires* riches, they will corrupt his mind.—Though he *urges* me, I shall not comply.—I shall walk in the fields to-day, unless it *rains*.—Despise not any condition, lest it *happens* to be your own.—Let him that is sanguine, take heed lest he *miscarries*.—Take care that thou *breakest* not any of the rules.—At the time of his return, if he *is* but expert in the business, he will be employed.—Unless he *learns* faster, he will be no scholar.—Though he *falls*, he shall not be utterly cast down.—On condition that he *comes*, I will consent to stay.—However that affair *terminates*, my conduct will be unimpeachable.—Till repentance *composes* his mind, he will be a stranger to peace.—Whether he *confesses* or not, the truth will be discovered.—Though at times the ascent to the temple of virtue *appears* steep and craggy, be not discouraged: persevere until thou *gainest* the summit: there, all is order, beauty, and pleasure.—If he *does* but intimate his desire, it will be sufficient to produce obedience.—If thou *dost* not forgive, perhaps thou wilt not be forgiven.—On condition that he *does* not interfere with me, I will consent to his coming.—With desires unsubdued, thou wilt fail of happiness, whether thou *dost* or *dost* not get the wealth so coveted.

If I was to write, he would not regard it.—Oh! that his heart was tender!—It would be well if the report was only a misrepresentation.—Was he ever so great and opulent, such conduct would debase him.—Was I to enumerate all her virtues, it would look like flattery.—Though I was perfect, yet would I not presume.—Was I standing on that giddy pinnacle, I fear I should fall.—He would deserve your censure, if he was acting as you say.—Unless he was told to be on his guard, he would inevitably be ensnared.



—I wish that I was rich enough to relieve you effectually.  
 —Had you rather Cæsar was living and die all slaves, or that Cæsar was dead to live all freemen?—Though he was my superior in knowledge, he would not thence have a right to impose his sentiments.

---

✎ *Correct the false government in the subjunctive which the following exhibit :*

KEY, page 38.

Though he be high, he hath respect to the lowly.—Whether he improve or not, I cannot determine.—Though the fact be extraordinary, it certainly did happen.—If he do but speak to display his abilities, he is unworthy of attention.—If he be but in health, I am content.—Though he do praise her, it is only for her beauty.—If thou do sincerely believe the truths of religion, act accordingly.—If virtue reward us not now, the payment will be made with interest.—If she desire to gain esteem, she does not employ the proper means.—Unless the accountant deceive me, my estate is improved.—Though self-government produce some uneasiness, it is light when compared with the pain of vicious indulgence.—Whether he think as he speaks, time will discover.—If thou censure uncharitably, thou deservest no favour.—Though virtue appear severe, she is truly amiable.—Though success be very doubtful, he must endeavour to succeed.—No one engages in that business, unless he aim at reputation, or hope for some singular advantage.—Though the design be laudable, and be favourable to our interest, it will involve much anxiety and labour.—Though he were her friend, he did not attempt to justify her.—I desire that thou wilt remember what thou wert.—Shall this verse pretend that thou wert my guide, my friend, and philosopher?—His behaviour made it reasonable to suppose that he were guilty. They befriended him, thinking that he were innocent.—I know not whether it were they or he who conducted the business.—If it were George and John who played truant, they are more in fault than any other boys would be.

---

# CONCORD AND CORRESPONDENCE AMONG THE PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

*Concord as it regards verb and verb.* Principles (III. 34), page 171.

☞ *Join the following verbs in construction with proper correspondence :*

## MODEL EXAMPLES.

He would be obliged, if you *to grant* him this favour.

Then did the executioner *lay hold* on him, and *to execute* him immediately.

He *writes*, but *to do* not speak well.

He would be obliged, if you would, could, or should (according as it may best suit the sense) *grant* him this favour.—Then did the executioner *lay hold* on him, and *execute* him immediately: (the two verbs are joined in the infinitive, with a common dependence on the auxiliary *did*.)—He *writes*, but *does* not speak well: (the individual verb *writes*, and the auxiliary verb *does*, are joined in correspondent forms.)

## EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 39).

Adding something to our knowledge every day, and *to take* care that we methodize what we learn, will make us wise at last.—He went out early, and *to return* late.—He will go out earlier to-morrow, and *to return* later.—I saw you, but *do not to know* you.—I shall be much obliged, if you *to grant* me that favour.

☞ *Correct the want of correspondence between the verbs joined in the following :*

## KEY, page 39.

Did he not tell me his fault, and entreated me to forgive him?—If he understand the subject, and attends to it industriously, he can scarcely fail of success.—When a man hath one of his hundred sheep astray, doth he not leave the ninety and nine, and goeth into the mountains, and seeketh that which is gone astray?—To be moderate in our views, and proceeding temperately in the pursuit of them, is the best way to ensure success.—By forming themselves on fantastic models, and ready to vie with one

another in the reigning follies, the young begin with being ridiculous, and often ended with being vicious and immoral.—Fierce as he moved, his silver shafts resound.—The court of Rome gladly laid hold on all the opportunities, which the imprudence, weakness, or necessities of princes afford it, to extend its authority.

---

#### CONCORD AND CORRESPONDENCE AMONG THE PARTS OF A SENTENCE—*continued*.

*Concord of Conjunctions with each other.* Prin. (III. 48–52), page 177, &c. See also Accidence, page liii.

☞ *Join the following sentences, each pair into one period, with proper correspondence of conjunctions.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

He is poor, and surrounded by temptations : he is honest. ☞ *Join by though and yet.*

True charity is sparing of another's reputation : it will never on slight grounds repeat a scandalous story. ☞ *Join by so and that.*

That action will have no issue : what I foretel. ☞ *Join by other and than ; also simply by but.*

Though he is poor, and surrounded by temptations, yet he is honest.—True charity is so sparing of another's reputation, that it will never, on slight grounds, repeat a scandalous story.—That action will have no other issue than what I foretel : (or) no issue but what I foretel.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 40).

The understanding fails to guide the heart :

The corruption of the heart misleads the understanding.

☞ *Join by either and or.*

☞ *Join the same by whether and or, and place the member of a period so formed before the following member, in such a manner as to conclude the period :*

The effect is equally deplorable.

Nothing is necessary in this undertaking :

And nothing at the same time easy :

Circumspection.

☞ *Join by more, more, than : and again by so, so, as.*

Spring is followed by summer, summer, by autumn, autumn, by winter :

Youth must be succeeded by maturity, maturity, by decline of strength, and decline of strength, by age and death.

☞ *Join by as and so.*

☞ *To the period so formed prefix though, and then join by yet, the following :*

To the good man a time will come, when a brighter spring shall appear, a spring that shall last throughout eternity.

☞ *Correct the defective correspondence in the words used to connect the parts of the following :*

KEY, page 40.

Neither the cold or the fervid, are fitted for stable friendship.—He is not equally diligent as his brother.—There was something so amiable, and yet so piercing in his look, as affected me at once with love and terror.—I gained such a son, as all men called me happy.—Be ready to succour such persons who need your assistance.—The matter was no sooner proposed, but he withdrew to consider it.—He did it for no reason, than to be applauded by his flatterers.—He has too much sense and prudence, than to become a dupe to such artifices.—The resolution was not the less fixed, that the secret was as yet communicated to very few.—The senator gained nothing further by his speech, but only to be commended for his eloquence.—He has little more of the scholar besides the name.—He has little of the scholar than the name.—They were no sooner risen, but they applied themselves to study.—From no other institution besides the admirable one of juries, could so great a benefit be expected.—Those savage people seemed to have no other element but war.—Such writers have no other standard on which to form themselves, except what chances to be fashionable and popular.—Germany ran the same risk as Italy had done.—No errors are so trivial, but they deserve to be corrected.—There is nothing so mean, nothing more wicked, than envy.

CONCORD AND CORRESPONDENCE AMONG THE PARTS OF  
A SENTENCE—*continued.*

☞ *Join the following with proper correspondence :*

MODEL EXAMPLES.

The proudest beauty came,  
and will return to,  
her parent dust.

The first member does not connect with the third, but requires from :

The proudest beauty came from, and will return to her parent dust.  
(Or with different arrangement) The proudest beauty came from her parent dust, and will return to it.

☞ *Correct the defective connection of parts in the following :*

KEY, page 41.

A few alterations, and some additions to the house, would make it comfortable.—The first proposal was essentially different, and inferior to the second.—He is more bold and active, but not so wise and studious as his companion.—There is no talent so useful, or which puts men more out of the reach of accidents, than discretion.—The intentions of some of these philosophers, nay, of many, might, and probably were good.—The reward is his due; and it has already, or will hereafter be given to him.—Sincerity is as valuable, and even more valuable, than knowledge.—No person was ever so perplexed, or sustained the mortifications, as he has done to-day.—These arts have enlightened, and will enlighten, every person who shall attentively study them.

CONCORD AND CORRESPONDENCE—*continued.*

☞ *Join the following with proper correspondence :*

MODEL EXAMPLE.

The deaf man—his ears were opened  
and his tongue loosened  
doubtless glorified the great physician.

To connect *his ears were opened* with its subject, we must convert *his* into *whose* ; and to make the next member correspondent, we must make the same change : it would be wrong to use *whose* in one place, and *his* in the other : correspondence in purpose must be accompanied by correspondence of construction.

The deaf man whose ears were opened, and whose tongue was loosened, doubtless glorified the great physician.

---

✎ *Correct the defective correspondence in the following :*

KEY, page 41.

Never was a man so little accustomed to adversity ; nor was ever a man that better sustained it.—It is not when fortune smiles that the heart is tried, but at the time she frowns.—Kindness and being forbearing, are the means of making and preserving friends.—How a seed grows up into a tree, and the way the mind acts upon the body, are mysteries we cannot fathom.—We should often recollect what the wisest men have said and written, concerning human happiness and vanity.—That species of commerce will produce great gain or loss.—Many days, and even weeks, pass away unimproved.—By temperance, a man may preserve health ; by being virtuous, he may secure peace ; by having industry, he may gain competence.

---

#### CONCORD AND CORRESPONDENCE—*continued*.

✎ *Join the following with proper correspondence :*

##### MODEL EXAMPLE.

To the happiness of having brought up a virtuous family,  
my friend soon had the satisfaction of seeing all his children well placed out in the world.

(The latter member will not carry out the purposed construction of the former, unless some such word as *join*, *add*, or *unite* is used at the proper place in the latter).

To the happiness of having brought up a virtuous family, my friend soon joined the satisfaction of seeing all his children well placed out in the world.

---

✎ *Correct the defective correspondence in the following*

KEY, page 42.

Mrs. A. B. presents her compliments to Mr. C. D. and desires you will consider me your debtor for the subscription you paid in my name.—Whereas some evil-disposed person or persons broke my windows last night; the said evil deed was committed about ten o'clock; and I hereby offer a reward of five guineas to any one who will make known the said person or persons that committed it.—Grateful for the favours hitherto received, nothing shall be wanting to merit a continuance of the same.—The office of gravedigger being vacant by the death of X., I am a man with a large family, and beg to have your voice and interest.—Among the good offices that have been done to me by that considerate man, I am very much obliged to him, and especially for not having flattered me.—Seeing that you never take any pains, you are surprised at your frequent failures.—While using the proper means, nothing shall be wanting to our success.—A man cleaning windows, the machine on which he stood gave way, and he was precipitated into the street.—Going one night into his coal-cellar, a man was found trying to hide himself in one of its corners.—As gold is tried in the fire to ascertain its purity; afflictions are sent upon the earth to men.—As we never learn to make the best use of time on hand; and every day diminishes that which we believe is still before us; there is a tract behind of misspent hours.—If our days are often cloudy; if a temperate sunshine never lasts long; if the calm of life is often broken by tempests; upon the whole a blessing is, or may be secured. According to its extent, population, military force, and civilization, so do we judge of the strength of a nation.

---

CONCORD AND CORRESPONDENCE—*continued.*

✍ *Join the following with proper correspondence.*

## MODEL EXAMPLES.

They are always quarrelling	with	themselves: each other.
She was the fairest	among	
She was fairer		of all her daughters: than any of her daughters.
He desires to be respected	but he will never meet with it.	
He desires respect	but he never will be.	

They are always quarrelling among themselves.—They are always quarrelling with each other.—She was the fairest of all: (her daughters cannot be added, because she could not be one of her own daughters). She was fairer than any of her daughters.—He desires respect, but he will never meet with it.—He desires to be respected, but he never will be.

✍ *Correct the defective correspondence in the following:*

## KEY, page 42.

He passed through Germany, and the Baltic sea, to Sweden.—I understood him the best of all the others that spoke.\*—The plan is the likeliest of any other to succeed.\*—We, Britons, do not want a genius more than the rest of our neighbours.\*—By intercourse with the world, we may improve and rub off the rust of a retired education.\*—All people seek to be happy; and yet there are few who attain it.—It was an unsuccessful undertaking; which, although it has failed, is no objection to an enterprise so well concerted.\*—Whenever he comes, he always inquires after your health.\*—The reason why he did so, was because he was required to do it.\*

\* These examples, though given here as violations of grammatical correspondence, ought rather to be deemed violations of logical accuracy. See further examples of the same kind in the ensuing page. Grammar and logic are clearly distinct in theory; but it was to be expected that in reaching the confines of grammar some examples of faulty sentences would occur, of which we might reasonably doubt whether the correction should be assigned to grammar or to logic. See Principles, Syntax, at page 228, the Remark immediately preceding Principle 125, "It will no doubt seem," &c.



*Specimens of sentences not grammatically, but logically or rhetorically defective.*

PRIN. (III., 54—56), page 181 *et seq.*; also (95) page 210.

---

#### SPECIMENS OF SENTENCES LOGICALLY DEFECTIVE.

---

☞ *Alter the following, so that the words of each example shall make sense, and this the sense most likely to be intended.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

And he that was dead, sat up.

He is so angry that he cannot go abroad.

More complete success cannot be expected.

The sea was more than usually agitated.

In the first example we must logically if not rhetorically say, "He that had been dead:" to say that *he was dead when he sat up*, cannot be meant, because logically absurd.\* In the second example, the latter fact cannot be understood as a consequence from the first, unless something is also understood which rationally connects them; hence to state the facts in the way in which they are understood, we must either supply what is omitted, or leave out the connecting words, *so that*; using *and*, or some other proper conjunction instead. In the third example, we must drop the word *more*, which does not make sense with such a word as *complete*; if without this word, the sentence should seem to convey another meaning than the one intended,—then, retaining *more*, we must join to it, instead of *complete*, a word that will make sense with it, as *triumphant* or *satisfactory*; or, instead of the two words, use the single comparative term *greater*, or the phrase a *higher degree of*. In the fourth example, the strict included meaning is, that the sea is usually agitated; and that, on this occasion, it was more than usually agitated: a meaning not illogical in itself, but probably more than the meaning intended. If so, the words are put together illogically, because though they make a sense, yet taken strictly, they go beyond the probable sense intended, namely, that expressed by saying, the sea was agitated more than usual.

---

\* Logically absurd, because *being dead* includes, in the meaning of the phrase, the absence of all power of self-motion. Physical impossibility does not involve logical absurdity, till the terms we use imply that we cannot understand one fact without understanding another as included in it.

## EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 43).

And the multitude wondered, when they saw the lame walking, and the blind seeing.\*—I intended to have transacted that affair yesterday.—I intended to transact that affair by the time you called, so as to be quite at leisure.—His work is perfect; his brother's more perfect; and his father's the most perfect of all.—His assertion was truer than his opponent's.—The first project was to shorten discourse, by cutting polysyllables into one.—When a string of such sentences succeeds one another, the effect is disagreeable. Ambition is so insatiable, that it will make any sacrifice to attain its objects.—That picture of the emperor's does not much resemble him.—No human happiness is so complete as to be without alloy.—He has passed through many stormy seas and lands.—We are too often hurried with the violence of passion, or with the allurements of pleasure.—I intended to finish the letter before the bearer called, that he might not have been detained.—George is the most learned of all the other students that belong to the seminary.—To despise others for their poverty, or to value ourselves for our wealth, are dispositions highly culpable.—The new set of curtains did not correspond to the old pair of blinds.—I had intended yesterday to have walked out, but I have been again disappointed.—His conduct is so provoking, that many will condemn, and a few† will pity him.—Though the scene was very affecting, he showed a little‡ emotion on the occasion.—In spite of his misconduct, he had few† friends.—Notwithstanding his illness, he had little‡ appetite.

\* \* Further examples of absurd or inadequate expression, not violating the laws of grammar, must be reserved for *The Manual of Logic*.

\* This example (and the same effect will often happen) cannot be made logical without losing its rhetorical spirit.

† Of these phrases, "a few," "a little;" "few," "little," the meaning in view goes beyond the strict expression; but in order to secure the effect, we must conform to the custom which originates them. In rhetoric, this mode of speaking is deemed a figure, and called *Li'to-tes* or *Extenuation*. The examples serve to show that the three arts concerned in perfecting language, *practically* mingle. But their *theoretical* differences ought nevertheless to be clearly discriminated.

*Specimens of sentences not grammatically nor logically,  
but rhetorically defective.*

PRIN. (III., 112-117), page 216 *et seq.*

---

SPECIMENS OF SENTENCES RHETORICALLY DEFECTIVE.

---

☞ *Alter the following, so that the style shall follow the best custom, and have the smoothness or spirit which rhetoric requires.*

MODEL EXAMPLES.

Moses was the meekest man whom we read of in the Old Testament.

However beautiful they appear, they have no real merit.

We may reason exceedingly strongly, without knowing what is a syllogism.

At worst, I could but incur a gentle reprimand.

The world's government is not left to chance.

His honour, interest, religion, were all embarked in this undertaking.

When Socrates fell, truth, virtue, religion, fell with him.

He does not want courage, but is defective in sensibility.

The gay and the pleasing are sometimes the most insidious and dangerous companions.

Calumny and detraction are sparks, which if we do not blow, they will go out of themselves.

To have no one to whom we heartily wish well, and for whom we are warmly concerned, is a deplorable state.

I beg the favour of your acceptance of a copy of a view of the manufactories of the West Riding of the county of York.

When I last saw him, he had grown considerably.

The house framed a remonstrance, where the king's prerogative was spoken of with great freedom.

*Rhetorically Improved thus :*

Moses was the meekest man that we read of in the Old Testament.

How beautiful soever they appear, they have no real merit.

We may reason exceeding strongly, without knowing what is a syllogism.

At the worst, I could but incur a gentle reprimand.

The government of the world is not left to chance.

His honour, his interest, his religion, were all embarked in this undertaking.

When Socrates fell, truth, and virtue, and religion, fell with him.

He does not want courage, but he is defective in sensibility.

The gay and pleasing are sometimes the most insidious and dangerous companions.

Calumny and detraction are sparks, which, if we do not blow them, will go out of themselves.

To have no one we heartily wish well to, and are warmly concerned for, is a deplorable state.

I beg you will favour me, by accepting a copy of a view of the manufactories in the West Riding of Yorkshire.

When I last saw him, he was grown considerably.

The house framed a remonstrance, in which the king's prerogative was spoken of with great freedom.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE (KEY, page 44).

And the multitude wondered, when they saw those who had been lame, walking, and those who had been blind, seeing.\*—They are the same persons who assisted us yesterday.—On whichever side they are contemplated, they appear to advantage.—It is remarkable his continual endeavours to serve us, notwithstanding our ingratitude.—Charles was extravagant, and by this mean became poor and despicable.—They conducted themselves exceedingly indiscreetly.—At best, his gift was a poor offering, when we consider his estate.—Clelia is a vain woman, whom if we do not flatter, she will be displeased.—Good as the cause is, it is one from which numbers are deserted.—Let us not set our hearts on such a mutable, such an unsatisfying world.—I have come at the time proposed, but have fallen upon an evil hour.—He is a person of great property, but does not possess the esteem of his neighbours.—Propriety of pronunciation is the giving to every word that sound which the politest usage of the language appropriates to it.—This treaty was made at earl Moreton the governor's castle.—Idle persons imagine, that, howsoever deficient they may be in point of duty, they consult at least their own satisfaction.—The winter has not been as severe as we expected.—When we have once drawn the line, by intelligence and precision, between our duty and sin, the line we ought, on no occasion, to transgress.—If we consult the improvement of mind, or the health of body, we shall not neglect exercise as conducive to health.—We should be studious to avoid too much restraint, as well as indulgence, in our management of children.—The furniture

\* To amend this example rhetorically, will be to make it illogical, if when rhetorically improved, we receive the meaning literally. But rhetoric often disregards a literal rendering of sentences, or parts of sentences.

was all purchased at Wentworth's the joiner's.—Alvarez was a man of corrupt principles, and of detestable conduct ; and, what is still worse, gloried in his shame.—It is amazing his propensity to this vice, against every principle of interest and honour.

\* \* Further examples of unpolished, quaint, or weak expression, not violating the laws of grammar, must be reserved for *The Manual of Rhetoric*.

---

### EXERCISES IN SYNTAX

#### PROMISCUOUSLY DISPOSED.

✎ *Correct the errors in the following :*

KEY, page 45.

Great has been his disobedience and folly.—On these causes depend all the happiness or misery which exist.—The property of James, I mean his books and furniture, were wholly destroyed.—This prodigy of learning, this scholar, critic, and antiquarian, were entirely destitute of breeding and civility.—We adore the Divine Being, He who is from eternity to eternity.—Thou, Lord, who hath permitted afflictions to come upon us, will deliver us from it in due time.—In this place, there were not only security, but an abundance of provisions.—By these attainments, are the master honoured and the scholars encouraged.—Not one in fifty of those who call themselves deists, understand the nature of the religion they reject.—Time and chance, as it is said, happeneth to all men ; but every person do not consider that these, and many other terms, are the inventions of man, to conceal our necessary, or our wilful ignorance.—The active mind of man seldom or never rests satisfied with their present condition.—We must prepare ourselves to resist pleasure, and to endure pain, when either of them interfere with our duty.—To rest wholly on faith, or on works, is one of those seductions which easily misleads men.—She was really in that sad condition that her friend had represented her.—An army present a painful sight to a thinking and feeling person.—The enemies who we have most to fear, are those of our own hearts.—Thomas disposition is better than his brothers, and he appears

happier ; but some degree of trouble is all mens portion.—Though remorse sometimes sleep during prosperity, it will surely awake in adversity.—It is an invariable law of our present condition, that every pleasure pursued to excess, convert themselves into poison.—I cannot yield to such a proposal, neither at the present moment, nor, I trust, at no time.—He concealed the plan suggested, either thinking it base to betray what was entrusted to his confidence, or imagined it impossible that a scheme so ill-concerted should take effect.—The Saviour applauded her who he had seen casting her two mites into the treasury.—How much is real virtue and merit exposed to suffer the hardships of a stormy life!—This is one of the duties which requires peculiar circumspection.—There are principles in man which ever have, and ever will, incline him to offend.—Whence have arisen such variety of opinions and tenets in religion?—To SUMMON is a verb ; and SUMMONS are its correspondent noun singular.—I must summons every witness.—There is not, nor ought not to be, such a thing as constructive treason.—He is a new created knight, and his dignity sits awkward on him.—His speech contains one of the grossest and infamousest calumnies that ever was uttered.—Too great a variety of studies dissipate and weaken the mind.—Each of them have their merit.—Having began to throw off the restraints of reason, he soon run into deplorable excesses.—The business was no sooner opened, but it was cordially acquiesced in.—All the mockery of professed friends, aiding the opposition of declared enemies, were not able to turn him from his purpose.—Though the story be mysterious, it is worthy of attention.—Be solicitous to aid such deserving persons who appear to be destitute of friends.—Ignorance or the want of light, produce sensuality, covetousness, and those violent contests with others about trifles, which occasions so much misery and crimes in the world.—Though he was richer than me, which he is not, he would not thence have claim to higher rank.—He acted conformable to his instructions.—The man is prudent which speaks little.—All float on the surface of a river, which is running toward a boundless ocean.—Temperance, more than drugs, are likely to cure the generality of sicknesses.—They under-

stand the practical part better than him; but he is much better acquainted with the theory than them.—No person could speak stronger on this subject, nor behave nobler, than our young advocate.—The peoples happiness is the statesmans honour.—If it were he who acted so ungratefully, he is doubly in fault.—If it was she instead of he, I should be glad to have a companion.—Whether virtue have been profitable or no, we must adhere to her dictates.—It is one of those artifices which seduces men most easily, under the appearance of benevolence.—This is the person who we are so much obliged to, and who we expected to see when the favour was conferred.—What can be the cause of the court-martial delaying its judgment for so long a time?—He may not be the author, but I understood it to be he.—Generosity, when it is genuine, and not a term to hide ostentatious selfishness, there are no person who do not confess it to be a virtue.—His greatest hope, and highest aim, were to secure his old age from absolute poverty.—Is success without the preparation, and escape from dangers without the precaution, required from others, likely to be attained by you?—Every member of the body, every bone, joint, and muscle, lie exposed to many disorders, which neither prudence, nor precaution, nor the deepest skill of the physician, are sufficient to prevent.—It is right said, that though faith justify us, yet works must justify our faith.—Should an academy be established for the cultivation of our language, let them stop the license of translators.—Neither flatter or condemn the rich nor the great.—To be patient, resigned, and thankful under afflictions and disappointments, demonstrate genuine piety.—Steady application, as well as genius and abilities, are necessary to produce eminence.—There is, in that seminary, several students skilled in mathematical knowledge.—High hopes and florid views is a great enemy to tranquillity.—Year after year steal something from us.—The grand temple consisted of one great, and several smaller edifices.—The climate of England is not so pleasant as those of France, Spain, or Italy.—Much of the good and evil that happens to us, are owing to what we call undesigned and fortuitous events.—The lesson was the easier learned from the good-will with which he set about

it.—He has not yet cast off all regard for decency ; and this is the most can be advanced in his favour.—The girls school was better conducted than the boys.—The disappointments he has met with, or the loss of his much loved friend, has occasioned a total disarrangement of his mental powers.—The concourse of people were so great, that with difficulty we passed through them.—All the women, children, and treasure, which remained in the city, fell under the victor's power.—These kind of vices, though they are found in the upper circles of life, are not less pernicious than those which we meet with among the lowest of men.—He acted agreeable to the dictates of prudence, though he were in a situation exceeding delicate.—He has greatly blessed me ; yea, even I, who, loaded with kindness, hath not been sufficiently grateful.—No persons feel the distresses of others, so much as them that have experienced distress themselves.—His conduct was equally unjust as dishonourable.—Though, at first, he begun to defend himself, yet, when the proofs appeared against him, he dared not any longer contend.—Many persons will not believe otherwise, but that they are free from prejudices.—The pleasure or pain of one passion, differ from those of another.—The rise and fall of the tides in this place, makes a difference of about twelve feet.—Five and seven make twelve, and one makes thirteen.—The court of Spain, who gave the order, were not aware of the consequence.—There was much spoke and wrote on each side of the question ; but I have chose to suspend my decision.—Let us not forget, that something more than gentleness and modesty, than complacency of temper and affability of manners, are requisite to form a worthy man, and a true christian.—Did they not invite you to their festival, and frankly apologized, at the time, for their previous inattention, the cause of which they satisfactory explained ?—If your agent be faithful, and is a man of only common talent, he will arrange the affair without further inconvenience to his employers.—To choose the best authors, and studying them with attention and perseverance, are the sure way to reach substantial learning.—Under difficulties which no ordinary talent could have made smooth, and being obstructed in such a way, which no ordinary



determination could have surmounted, he advanced steadily and securely to the object of his laudable ambition.—Neither wealth or power, rank or grandeur, had such an effect on his mind to make him forget the friends of his early days.—There is such torment in an evil conscience as it may well be called a hell upon earth.—No man is so virtuous, who has not much evil in him: nor is any one so vicious, who has not in him some good.—Whatever we nere enjoy, change, decay, and come to an end.—The recompense of a charitable gift is not less certain that, in order to be meritorious, it must be conferred without unnecessary display.—Ostentatious almsgiving has nothing more of charity in it, besides the name.—A courageous man may dare the same dangers as the foolhardy rush into; but he will never do so without an adequate motive.—Charlemagne was a greater sovereign, but he was not, I think, quite so estimable a man, as our king Alfred.—The refinement of ancient Greece was higher in point of art, but by no means so high in point of morals, as the refinement of modern Europe.—Abilities greater than ordinary, or efforts long continued, must have been used, when a man reaches and retains a high degree of eminence.—If virtue has not yet been rewarded, she will assuredly have an ample one hereafter.—The beauties discovered in Shakspeare's dramas, have multiplied, and will continue to multiply, as new readers shall be found.—Though men are said to be grateful in the same degree that they are revengeful, we must not think that a good man will be equally alive to the impressions of the one as of the other.—Not when the world is smiling on us, and hope points to years of prosperity, are the sentiments of fortitude and determination needed; but at the time we have to struggle with opposition, mischance, and uncertainty.—Mr. Smith presents his compliments to Mr. Brown, and cannot deny myself the pleasure of congratulating you on the marriage of your eldest daughter.—Dear Sir, I am very much obliged by your polite note, and in returning his thanks to Mr. Smith, Mr. Brown requests to be informed whether the family is all well.—Indulging himself in excess of meat, drink, and sleep, a bloated body, and a distempered mind, was the inevitable effect.—Among the benign effects

of christianity, the condition of woman has been raised, and her proper sphere of action ascertained.—When we consider how many innocent pleasures are provided for us ; many are the enjoyments which temperance brings to the active in life and limb ; many are the delights of intellect and sentiment which spring from inquiry, from contemplation, from the sources opened by poetry and her sister arts ; very many and exalted are those which are conferred on a good man, by his relations to his kind ; and, on the other hand, we see that every forbidden pleasure, whatever tumult of joy may come with it at the moment, is counterpoised by a ten-fold amount of evil, in the remorse, the shame, the disgrace, the loss of friends, the loss of health or of wealth, one, or other, or all of which, are sure to follow it : we are bound to confess that religion, in leaving free the former-mentioned pleasures, and closing from us only the latter, is the best friend of our race, the instructor whom it is our interest to follow through the paths of this world, even if she had no commission to guide us to a better.

---

#### GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS (OR PARSING), ON THE TRUE PRINCIPLES OF LANGUAGE.

The general principles unfolded in the *Accidence and Grammar* may be summed up in the following four maxims, which must be kept in mind throughout the exercises hereafter given.

1. Every expression which includes sense, is *one expression with one meaning*, whether a mere grammatical part of speech, as *John, great, is, soon, from, and* ; or a logical part of speech, that is, a part constructed of two or more parts, as *John-Smith, great-wisdom, very-soon, is-to blame, according-to, for-as-much* ; or a whole speech, as “*Stop!*” “*God is ;*” “*Unexpectedly the temptation came upon me.*”

2. An expression is called a verb or adverb, a substantive or adjective, a preposition or conjunction, not because it has such or such a meaning, *but because it is used in such or such a manner in helping to form the whole construction.* Thus the word *geography*, which is a noun substantive in ordinary use, is, as a noun, either wrongly used, or, without having recourse to a forgotten ellipsis, it must be accounted an adverb, in saying, “*He was taught geography.*”\*

\* A note may here be useful to prepare the teacher for modes of view, otherwise likely to startle him hereafter. We may remind him that any part of speech, as being *added to the verb*, may be called an adverb, and that this enlarged application of the term will not confound the usual grammatical distinctions, provided we reserve a

*not*, commonly used as an adverb, is an adjective in saying, "Not one was present." Thus the word *worth*, commonly a substantive, is a preposition in saying, "It cost twenty sovereigns, but it is not worth them."

3. Every constructed, otherwise called logical, expression, be it either incomplete or complete, that is, a part of speech, or the whole speech or period, *divides, primarily, into two parts only*; as, John | Smith; Great | wisdom; Very | soon; Is | to blame; "God | is;" "The temptation | came upon me unexpectedly;" "Unexpectedly, | the temptation came upon me;" "When I least expected it, | the temptation came upon me."

4. The verb is either the speech itself, or it is the part of speech that *absorbs every other part, till the intended construction or period is complete, which, being one expression with one meaning, is the verb complete*. Thus, "Speak," is a verb; "Speak ye," is still a verb; "Speak ye the truth," is still a verb; "Speak ye the plain truth," is still a verb; "Fearlessly, for the love of heaven, speak ye the plain truth," is still a verb. And so on with every addition that makes sense and construction with the parts of speech already put together.

#### COROLLARIES FROM THE ABOVE.

1. An expression may be complete, and yet incapable of analysis; as, "Go;" "Come;" "Silence!" "Welcome!"\* "Farewell."\*
2. In the English and most other languages of modern formation, the following and similar expressions are resolvable into nominative and verb; but we may, if we please, consider each sentence as a single word, of which the nominative is a mere syllable: "I-go;" "Thou-comest;" "He-speaks;" "We-came;" "You-went;" "They-spoke."

special description of the so-deemed adverb. In saying, "He acts prudently," *prudently* is both generally and specially an adverb, and we stop when we have called it so. But in saying, "He acts a prudent part," if we first call a *prudent part* an adverb, which it certainly is, because added to the verb, we are bound to subjoin its special character, namely, a noun objective to the verb. So also in saying, "He seems to act prudently," if we first call the phrase *to act prudently* an adverb, we are again to subjoin its special character, namely, a verb infinitive dependent on, and governed by, the personal verb. Again, if having taken the portion of construction formed by the words, *seems to act prudently*, we have called such portion a verb indicative in the third person singular, and we then *add*, by placing before it the word *John*, we are not forbidden, by any law of language or of reason, from calling *John* an adverb, provided we do not confound it with what is specially deemed an adverb, but subjoin its proper specification, namely, a noun nominative to the verb.

\* It is easily seen, however, that the last two examples were constructed expressions originally, though now deemed incapable of grammatical resolution.

3. The sign *to*, generally, but not always, prefixed to an English verb infinitive, should always be considered a mere syllable of the word; as, *To-go*; *to-come*; “*You ought to-speak*.”

---

*Sentences (completed verbs) of the simplest construction; that is, having one division without subdivision.*

Morning dawns.

A sentence dividing into a mere noun nominative, namely, *morning*, and a mere verb; the two parts making sense and construction\* with each other.—☞ *Declare, as usual, the person and number of each part, and show that the parts agree in those points; declare the mood and tense of the verb, as under Etymological Parsing.*

\* \* For other examples of sentences constructed of similar parts, return to page 18.

Instantly depart.

A sentence dividing into a mere adverb, namely, *instantly*, and a mere verb; the two parts making sense and construction with each other.—☞ *Declare the mood, &c.*

Hear me.

A sentence dividing into a mere verb active, namely, *hear*, and a pronoun objective; the two parts making sense and construction with each other.—☞ *Declare the mood, &c., of the verb; the person, &c., of the pronoun.*

Be tranquil.

A sentence dividing into a mere verb neuter, namely, *be*, and a mere adjective making sense with it, but agreeing grammatically with the nominative included in the verb, namely, with either *thou* or *ye*, masculine or feminine.

Strive to-improve. (Third corollary above.)

A sentence dividing into a mere verb imperative, namely, *strive*, and a mere verb infinitive; the two parts making sense and construction with each other, the former verb governing the latter.—☞ *Declare not only the mood, but the tense, &c. of each verb.*

---

\* Grammar is concerned only with the construction: it is Logic that, going along with Grammar, sees to the sense. If the words had been, “*Somnolency dawns*,” the combination would have been grammatical, but not logical; that is, there would have been the same correctness of construction, but no resulting sense.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE—*continued.*

Generously forgive. Come hither. Go away. Play fairly. Honestly confess. Never despair. Walk fast. Rise betimes. Eat moderately. Diligently labour. Pray frequently. Live contentedly. Sleep soundly.

Trust me. Admonish him. Assist us. Abandon them. Avoid extremes. Have patience. Hurt nobody. Fear God.

Be discreet. Grow better. Become cheerful. Live happy. Be advised. Feel contented. Stand quiet. Depart comforted.

Try to-excel. Stop to-consider. Hate to-offend. Dare to-differ. Seek to-agree. Love to-listen. Hope to-live. Prepare to-die.

I-succeed completely. (Second corollary above.)

A sentence dividing into (what may be deemed) a mere verb, namely, *I-succeed*, and a mere adverb; the two parts making sense and construction with each other.

He-loves nobody.

A sentence dividing into (what may be deemed) a mere verb active, namely, *he-loves*, and a mere noun objective to the verb; the two parts making sense and construction with each other.

You-are mistaken.

A sentence dividing into (what may be deemed) a mere verb neuter, namely, *you-are*, and a participial adjective; the two parts making sense with each other, but the adjective agreeing grammatically in gender and number with the nominative (*you*) included in the verb.

They-grow insolent.

A sentence dividing into (what may be deemed) a mere verb neuter, namely, *they-grow*, and a mere adjective; the two parts making sense with each other, but the adjective agreeing grammatically in gender and number with the nominative (*they*) included in the verb.

We-strive to-please.

A sentence dividing into (what may be deemed) a mere verb indicative, namely, *we-strive*, and a mere verb infinitive; the two parts making sense and construction with each other.

It-is I.

A sentence dividing into (what may be deemed) a mere verb, and a mere personal pronoun in the nominative case; the two parts making sense with each other, but the pronoun agreeing, by apposition

in the nominative case, with the nominative (*it*) included in the verb.

I-am he.

A sentence dividing into (what may be deemed) a mere verb, namely, *I am*, and a mere personal pronoun in the nominative case; the two parts making sense with each other, but the pronoun agreeing, by apposition in the nominative case, with the nominative (*I*) included in the verb.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE—continued.

I-~~rode~~ fast. Afterwards he-~~came~~. You-~~want~~ perseverance. He-~~conquered~~ Darius. Me he-~~hates~~. Her he-~~loves~~. Whom seekest-thou. They-~~are~~ untaught. She-~~became~~ rich. We-~~are~~ content. They-~~endeavour~~ to-improve. I-~~wish~~ to-speak. You-~~try~~ to-deceive. He-~~desires~~ to-go.

---

*Sentences (completed verbs) of complicated construction; that is, having subdivisions under one or both of the principal divisions.*

Morning sweetly dawns.

A sentence dividing into a mere noun nominative, and a logical verb, namely, *sweetly dawns*; the two parts making sense, &c. Again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere adverb, and a mere verb neuter, making, &c.

Young morning sweetly dawns.

A sentence dividing into a logical noun nominative, namely *young morning*, and a logical verb; the two parts making, &c. Again, the logical nominative subdivides into a mere adjective, and a mere substantive, making, &c. The logical verb subdivides as already shown.

Here endeth the epistle.

A sentence dividing into a logical verb, namely *here endeth*, and a logical noun nominative, namely *the epistle*, making, &c. Again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere adverb, and a mere verb, making, &c. And again, the logical nominative subdivides into a mere article, and a mere noun substantive, making, &c.

Brother John is arrived.

A sentence dividing into a logical noun nominative, namely *brother John*, and a logical verb, namely *is arrived*, making, &c. Again, the logical nominative subdivides into two nouns nominatives, making sense and construction with each other by immediate apposition. And again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb neuter indicative,

and a mere participle perfect, making sense with each other, and, in construction, forming the third person singular, present tense, indicative, of the neuter verb *to arrive*, under a passive form.

Your design has succeeded.

A sentence dividing into a logical noun nominative, namely *your design*, and a logical verb, namely *has succeeded*, making, &c. Again, the logical nominative subdivides into a mere adjective pronoun possessive, and a mere substantive, making, &c. And again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb indicative, and a mere participle perfect, making sense with each other, and, in construction, forming the third person singular, preterperfect, indicative, of the verb neuter *to succeed*.

John's plans may fail.

A sentence dividing into logical noun nominative, namely *John's plans*, and logical verb, namely *may fail*, making, &c. Again, the logical nominative subdivides into a mere noun in the possessive case, serving as an adjective, and a mere noun nominative, making sense with each other, and joined in construction by the former noun being governed in the possessive, and the latter governing it. And again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb indicative, and a mere verb infinitive, making sense with each other, and, in construction, forming the third person plural, present, potential, of the neuter verb *to fail*.

Alexander conquered Darius.

A sentence dividing into a mere noun nominative, and a logical verb, namely *conquered Darius*, making, &c. Again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb active, and a mere noun proper, making sense with each other, and joined in construction by the verb governing the noun in the objective case.

Who am I?

A sentence dividing into a mere pronoun relative, used interrogatively in the nominative case, and (what may be deemed) a mere verb, the two parts making sense with each other, but the relative pronoun agreeing, by apposition, with the nominative (*I*) included in the verb. In this mode of analysis, neither of the two parts is complicated, or, in other words, subdivided: but if we choose to subdivide the verb *am I*, the parts will be, the mere verb neuter *am*, and the personal pronoun *I*, making sense with each other, and joined in construction by the agreement of the verb with its nominative *I*, in the first person singular.

Who is elected?

A sentence dividing into a mere pronoun nominative, namely a relative used interrogatively, and a logical verb, namely *is elected*, making sense and construction, &c. Again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb neuter, and a mere participle perfect, making, &c.; and the two constituting the third person, singular, indicative of the verb *to elect* in the passive voice, namely, *to be elected*.

What man is that?

A sentence dividing into a logical noun nominative, namely, *what man*, and a logical verb, making, &c. Again, the logical nominative subdivides into a mere pronoun relative, used interrogatively and adjectively, and a mere substantive, making, &c. And again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb neuter, and a mere pronoun demonstrative, making sense and construction as verb and nominative, the two nominatives, namely *what man*, and *that*, being joined in apposition by means of the verb.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE—*continued*.

Diligent pupils rapidly improve. John Smith loves Susan. William's hat is lost. The evening is approaching. There lies your friend. Father William is feeble. No money was spent. Merry Christmas is coming. What duties now remain? Who is guilty? Icarus tried to-fly. Whole armies have perished.

Unexpectedly came sorrow.

A sentence dividing into a mere adverb, and a logical verb, namely *came sorrow*, making, &c. Again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb neuter, and a mere noun nominative, making, &c.

How well he-sings.

An exclamative sentence dividing into a logical adverb, namely *how well*, and (what may be deemed) a mere verb, making, &c. Again, the logical adverb subdivides into two mere adverbs making, &c.

Quite suddenly it-grew dark.

A sentence dividing into a logical adverb, namely *quite suddenly*, and a logical verb, making &c. Again, the logical adverb subdivides into two mere adverbs, making, &c. And again, the logical verb subdivides into (what may be deemed) a mere verb neuter, and a mere adjective, making sense with it, but agreeing grammatically with the nominative included in the verb.

Despairingly wandered Cain.

A sentence dividing into a mere adverb, and a logical verb, namely *wandered Cain*, making, &c. Again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb neuter, and a mere noun nominative, making, &c.

Great is Diana.

A sentence dividing into a mere adjective, making sense with the logical verb, namely *is Diana*, but agreeing grammatically with the nominative included in the logical verb. Again, the logical verb subdivides into a mere verb neuter, and a mere noun nominative, making &c.



Confess the truth.

A sentence dividing into a mere verb imperative, active; and a logical noun objective, making, &c. Again, the logical noun subdivides into a mere article, and a mere substantive, making, &c.

### EXAMPLES—*continued.*

How surprisingly we-succeeded! Most valuable is truth. Declare your purpose. I-fear his looks. Very soon comes Christmas. It-is wrong to-mock him. Give over the game. Never mind his jokes. Be ready to-for-give errors. Quite opportunely came relief. It-cured me completely. Approach them cautiously. Perseveringly go forward. Soon after we-lost him.

### NOTE.

Before we advance to further examples under the present head, namely "Sentences (Completed Verbs) of Complicated Construction," some general observations are required on the examples already given, and an application of those general observations to the examples which are to follow: both of which are meant rather for the teacher than the learner. For it is not to be expected that the learner will at once see, what is nevertheless a fact, that the most complicated sentences have their patterns in those already given. It will be for the teacher to lead the learner onward to this fact, by showing him that every period divides, primarily, into two parts; that each of these may again divide into two, as already shown; and that, though these may be again, and again, and again subdivisible, till we reach the mere grammatical parts; yet that the principle of subdivision is always the same as that which determines the primary divisions.

That what is stated above, may be recognised and acted upon by the teacher, the first general observation on the previous examples is this,—that, with some few exceptions, the primary division of complete construction is either into nominative and verb, (verb and nominative is the same,) or into adverb and verb, (verb and adverb is the same). And the second observation may be this,—that when the parts arising from the primary division, cannot, according to the ordinary views of grammar, take the names of the parts here indicated, namely, verb and its nominative, or verb and its adverb, the hindrance lies in the narrowness of the ground on which mere grammar builds its distinctions. As, in every complete construction, the verb is the absorbing part of speech, so every other part of speech in immediate connection with the verb, is, in a large application of the term, *an adverb*. Nevertheless, in a sentence constructed of a noun nominative, a verb active, and a noun objective, the connection is grammatically closer between the verb and its objective noun, than between the verb and its nominative. We say, therefore, that the sentence, "Alexander conquered Darius," divides primarily into the

nominative *Alexander*, and the logical verb *conquered Darius*; which is as much as to say that the substantive *Darius* is used adverbially at the same moment that *Alexander* is considered a part of speech distinct from the verb; although in proceeding to join this logical verb, *conquered Darius* to its nominative, that nominative becomes an adverb to the said logical verb. An apparent exception occurs to this reasoning, though really in unison with it, when the nominative to the verb is a personal pronoun usually deemed a part of the verb: for though in saying "He conquered Darius," if we separate *he*, emphatically, from what follows, so as to give it the logical distinctness of the noun it stands for, we have a sentence dividing, as before, into nominative and logical verb; yet if, avoiding such emphatic separation, we utter *He-conquered* as a single word, then is *he-conquered* a verb; and looking on the word *Darius* as a noun used adverbially, the division of the sentence will agree with the other of the two general modes of primary division, namely that into verb and adverb. If, however, this way of considering a noun objective, namely as an adverb, should appear to start too far from the ordinary procedure of grammar, we may call it, as usual, a noun objective, adding the statement that it makes sense and construction with the active verb governing it, and the difference will then be simply this,—that in the sentence *Alexander conquered Darius*, the primary division will not include the nominative in the first part, this first part consisting of the mere grammatical noun nominative *Alexander*; but that, in the sentence *He-conquered Darius*, the primary division will include the nominative in the first part, the second part consisting of the mere grammatical noun objective, *Darius*.—Again, in saying "Great is Diana," (a rhetorical transposition of "Diana is great," which divides into a mere noun nominative, and a logical verb,) we are not forbidden to call the two parts, in that previous transposed form, an adverb and a logical verb; for *great*, inasmuch as it does not make immediate sense with the substantive *Diana*, but with the logical verb *is Diana*, will justly, in the enlarged application of the term, be called an adverb. But if, once more, this way of considering an adjective should appear to start too far from ordinary grammar, we may, as usual, call it an adjective, adding the statement that it makes sense with the logical verb, but agrees, grammatically, with the nominative included in the logical verb.—And, to repeat the same mode of reasoning and practice with regard to the example "It-is wrong to mock him," (a rhetorical transposition of "To mock him is wrong," which divides into a logical nominative, namely *to mock him*, and a logical verb,) since we are not forbidden, in that previous transposed form, to call the former member *It-is wrong* a logical verb, neither are we forbidden to consider the remaining part, *to mock him*, a logical adverb. But if this (to go on with our reasoning and practice) should seem to depart too far from ordinary grammar, we may say that the latter division is a logical verb infinitive, governed by the previous logical verb; the logical infinitive subdividing into a mere active verb infinitive, and a mere pronoun objective, the infinitive verb and its objective making sense and con-

struction with each other; which resolution will indeed be proper, if, instead of calling the expression *to mock him* a logical verb infinitive, we may have called it, as at first suggested, a logical adverb.

The sentences thus far analyzed have been constructed with only six of the grammatical parts of speech,—the verb and the adverb, the substantive and the adjective, the pronoun, which is but a kind of substantive, and the article, which is but a kind of adjective. The interjection is no *part* of speech at all. There remain, then, only the preposition and the conjunction to be considered as parts that assist in the construction of sentences (completed verbs); and the consideration of these will include the preliminary explanation necessary to be furnished, for understanding the more complicated contrivance of sentences hereafter given for analysis.

Now with regard to the preposition, its use is, to form with its objective, either a logical adverb to a verb, or a logical adjective to a substantive. Thus the sentence (completed verb) "*He went to York,*" divides into (what may be deemed) a mere verb, and a logical adverb; the latter subdividing into a mere preposition, and a mere noun objective, making, &c. Thus the logical noun substantive *The road to York*, divides into the logical substantive, *the road*, and the logical adjective *to York*, making, &c.; the former subdividing into a mere article and a mere substantive, making, &c.; and the latter subdividing as shown in the previous example.\*

With regard to the conjunction,—including the pronoun relative, which is a sort of conjunction,—its use is, to prefix or affix a sentence to a verb, or to a noun, in order that the sentence so added shall be a logical adverb in the former case, a logical adjective in the latter. Thus, in saying "*He will come when he likes,*" the expression *when he likes*, is a logical adverb making sense and construction with the previous logical verb, namely *He will come*, and dividing into *when*, a mere adverbial conjunction, and into (what may be deemed) a mere verb neuter, namely, *he-likes*, making, &c. Thus, in saying "*John, when he likes,*" the expression *John, when he likes*, is a logical noun, subdividing into the mere noun proper, *John*, and a logical adjective, the latter again subdividing as shown in the previous example. Or the use of a conjunction, when not quite such as is shown in these examples, is, to join two or more nouns, or two or more verbs, or two or more adjectives, &c., into one construction, that so, the nouns taken all together, shall be a logical noun, the verbs taken all together shall be a logical verb; and so forth. Thus, the expression, *John, James, and Joseph*, is a plural logical noun collective, or noun of multitude, dividing, primarily, into *John, James*, which is also a logical noun collective; and into *and Joseph*; a logical noun making sense with the other logical noun, and joined with it in construction, that is, in the same case, be the case either nominative or objective. Again the former logical noun, namely *John, James*, subdivides into the mere

---

\* It is no novelty in grammar that the same expression should be used, sometimes as an adverb, sometimes as an adjective: e. g. "*He lived long;*" "*A long life.*"

noun proper *John*, and the mere noun proper *James*\*. And again the latter logical noun subdivides into the mere conjunction *and*, and the mere noun proper *Joseph*. Thus, also, the expression *John, James, or Joseph*, is a singular logical noun distributive, dividing, primarily, into *John, James*, also a logical noun distributive, (dependent on what is to follow it for this mode of understanding it;) and into *or Joseph*, a logical noun making sense with the other logical noun, and joined with it in construction, that is, in the same case, be the case either nominative or objective. Again, the former logical noun subdivides as shown in the previous example; and again the latter logical noun, namely, *or Joseph*, subdivides in the same manner as *and Joseph*, in the previous example. Thus, likewise, the expression *reads, writes, and ciphers*, is a logical verb collective, in the third person, singular, of the present tense, indicative; and it divides, primarily, into *reads, writes*, also a logical verb collective; and into *and ciphers*, a logical verb making sense with the other logical verb, and joined with it in construction, that is, in the same mood, tense, person, and number. Again, the former logical verb, namely, *reads, writes*, subdivides into the mere verb *reads*, and the mere verb *writes*. And again, the latter logical verb subdivides into the mere conjunction *and*, and the mere verb *ciphers*. Thus, also, the expression *reads, writes, or ciphers*, is a logical verb distributive, in the same person, number, tense, and mood, as the verb collective in the previous example; and it divides, primarily, into *reads, writes*, also a logical verb distributive, (dependent upon what is to follow for this mode of understanding it;) and into *or ciphers*, a logical verb making sense with the other logical verb, and joined with it in construction, that is, in the same tense, &c. Each of these logical verbs subdivides in the same manner as in the previous example. These logical verbs, namely, *reads, writes, and ciphers, reads, writes, or ciphers*, are, in both instances, the same in person, number, mood, and tense; and they can agree, grammatically, only with a nominative of the same person and number. Therefore, both the logical verb collective, and the logical verb distributive, if proposed to be joined with the nouns, as nominative, which were previously exemplified, can be joined, grammatically, only with the logical noun distributive, *John, James, or Joseph*. But if we put the logical verb collective, and the logical verb distributive, into the third person plural, so that the forms shall be, *read, write, and cipher; read, write, or cipher*; then each is fitted to unite in construction with the logical noun collective, *John, James, and Joseph*.

Such are the principles, meant at this stage for the instructor rather than the pupil, which must be kept in view, in teaching the analysis of sentences more complicated in construction than those that have

---

\* It is a fundamental error to conceive that the meaning which embraces the knowledge of things distinct and several, is itself several: meaning is, and ever must be, one; and the expression by which meaning is conveyed, however made up of parts, is, when those parts are put together, *one expression with one meaning*: the separate meanings of the separate words are all merged and lost in that one meaning.

been hitherto exemplified. In proceeding to such sentences, some further help will be given both to teacher and pupil, before leaving them to find their own way in sentences for which little or no subsequent help is afforded.

Men of violence arose in multitudes.

A sentence, being a period, (completed verb,) dividing, primarily, into a logical noun nominative, namely, *men of violence*, and a logical verb, making, &c. The logical noun nominative subdivides into a mere substantive, and a logical adjective, namely *of violence*, making, &c. Again, the logical adjective subdivides into a mere preposition, and a mere noun objective making, &c.—The logical verb, namely, *arose in multitudes*, subdivides into a mere verb, and a logical adverb, namely *in multitudes*, making, &c. Again, the logical adverb, subdivides into a mere preposition, and a mere noun objective making, &c.

God made the country, and man made the town.

A sentence, being a period, (completed verb,) dividing, primarily, into a logical verb, and a logical adverb, making, &c. The logical verb subdivides into a mere noun nominative, and a logical verb, namely, *made the country*. Again this subordinate logical verb subdivides into a mere verb, and a logical objective, making, &c. And again, the logical objective subdivides into a mere article, and a mere noun substantive, making, &c.—The logical adverb, namely, *and man made the town*, subdivides into a mere conjunction, namely, *and*, and a logical verb. Again, the logical verb, namely *man made the town*, subdivides into a mere noun nominative, and a logical verb, namely, *made the town*. And again, this subordinate logical verb subdivides, and further subdivides, in the manner which previous examples show.

The person whom you see, says that he wants employment.

A sentence, being a period, (completed verb,) dividing into logical nominative and logical verb. The logical nominative subdivides into a logical substantive, namely *the person*, which subdivides as previous examples show; and the logical adjective, namely, *whom you see*, which in construction is a sentence, subdivides into the mere relative pronoun adjective *whom*, and into (what may be deemed) a mere verb active governing it, namely, *you-see*.—The logical verb, namely, *says that he wants employment*, subdivides into a mere verb, namely *says*, and a logical adverb, namely, *that he wants employment*. Again, the logical adverb subdivides into a mere conjunction, namely *that*, and a logical verb, namely *he-wants employment*; and again, this logical verb subdivides as previous examples show.

When the afflictions of life, to which we are all born, come upon us, | we begin to think, if we are wise, of the duties in this world, which are to prepare us for a life of eternity.

The primary division of this period, (completed verb,) is into logical adverb, and logical verb: the subdivisions are many. For instance, the logical adverb subdivides thus: *When | the afflictions of life, to which we are all born, come upon us*. The mere adverb

when being detached, what remains is a complete verb or sentence, which subdivides thus: *The afflictions of life, to which we are all born, | come upon us.* This subdivision is, logical nominative and logical verb; of which, the logical nominative, namely, *the afflictions of life | to which we are all born,* again subdivides into logical noun substantive and logical adjective;\* and each of these again subdivides as previous examples show. Returning to the second member of the period, the logical verb, namely, *we begin to think, if we are wise, | of the duties in this world, which are to prepare us for a life of eternity;* we find that this logical verb subdivides, first, into a subordinate logical verb, and logical adverb. The subordinate logical verb, namely, *we begin to think, | if we are wise,* again subdivides into a logical verb, and logical adverb. The logical verb, namely, *we-begin | to-think,* subdivides into (what may be deemed) mere grammatical elements, as previous examples show; and the logical adverb, namely, *if | we are wise,* subdivides into a mere conjunction, and a verb, being a complete sentence, also subdividing as previous examples show. Again, as to the logical adverb, which makes sense and construction with the logical verb that goes on to complete the period, namely, the logical adverb, *of | the duties in this world which are to prepare us for a life of eternity;* this logical adverb subdivides into a mere preposition, namely, *of,* and a logical noun, objective to the preposition. The logical noun objective again subdivides into *the duties in this world,* which is a logical substantive, and into all that follows it, which is a logical adjective. The logical adjective, namely, *which are to prepare us | for a life of eternity,* subdivides into a logical verb, and a logical adverb, each of which subdivides several times, as previous examples show, till we reach the mere grammatical elements.

To assist the pupil a little further, a synoptical view of the foregoing analysis is added. Let him observe that the *grammatical* verb WE-BEGIN is the primary element of the whole construction;—it is to this that all the other parts are congregated, and in which they merge; till at last the *logical* verb is formed; till the expression is complete,—the one expression with one meaning, which the occasion required.

---

\* The division of a logical, that is, of a constructed noun, must always be into the substantive part, and the adjective part; but the best place for the primary division is not always certain. Of the logical noun above, the primary division may be, *The | afflictions of life to which we are all born,* where the mere article appears as the adjective part, and the remainder is the logical substantive with which it makes sense and construction: or the primary division may be, *The afflictions of life | to which we are all born,* where the *afflictions of life* is the substantive part, and the appended sentence, complete within itself as a sentence, is the logical adjective. The latter mode of division will be the preferable one in this sentence; but in many other instances, the former will be equally good: e.g. *The | road to York;* *The | present which you gave me;* *A | very considerable monitor.*



[illegible]



EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE—*continued.*1. *Periods of complicated construction, whose primary division is into nominative and verb.*

A man who conscientiously fulfils the duties of life, is secure of the favour of heaven, and seldom fails to have that of the world.

Rome, the mistress of the world, the seat of empire, fell to ruin through the vices of her people.

Soothing folly, or exalting vice, is an act of baseness much too costly for an honest mind to yield in order to purchase fame.

The kingdoms of modern Europe, founded by people of barbarous manners, but of liberal political institutions, arose out of the ruins of empires which they destroyed.

He who begins life with a reverence for his parents, who listens, while young, to the voice of religion, who, as he grows older, undertakes every office in life with a sincere intention to fulfil its duties, and with a perseverance in action corresponding to his intention,—is a man that must live successfully; or if not successfully according to worldly calculation, yet successfully for the real ends of his existence.

Justice, temperance, prudence, fortitude, the four qualities which reason discovers to be the cardinal virtues, ought to be founded, in a person who professes Christianity, upon Christian motives.

Faith, hope, charity, the three virtues which are essential to the perfection of the Christian character, have their foundation in the love of God, and the love of man.

Henry the Fifth, king of England, who invaded France on a pretext that the inheritance of that kingdom was his by right,—displayed, in his invasion, the qualities of a warrior, and won applause from the people of his age; though he would have been much better employed in promoting the well-being, in peace, of his English people at home.

The influences that mould the infant mind, the examples by which the growing child is taught, the habits that insensibly grow around our faculties, mental and corporeal,—must all, in a proper use of the word *education*, be in-

cluded in the term, as well as the set instruction which we receive from appointed preceptors.

To be always engaged in the anxious pursuit of temporal objects, while those of eternity are neglected, and, with them, the subjugation of the passions, the purifying of the heart, and the advancement of the mind in useful knowledge, useful to the individual, and to those with whom he is connected,—is unfortunately but too true a description of the lives of the greater part of mankind.

2. *Periods of complicated construction, whose primary division is into adverb and verb, or verb and adverb.\**

If we take no care at all for to-morrow, we may have cause to repent when to-morrow comes.

Though circumstances may be unfavourable at the present moment, the time is perhaps at hand when all shall be as we wish.

When the good man of the house is absent, and the servants are left to their own discretion, it too often happens that, for them as well as their master, a great deal of future evil is prepared.

We may, and ought to make provision for the season of age, by enriching the mind, and laying aside some store for the wants of the body; although it is very possible that we may never reach the time, when we shall have to draw upon the latter.

As no one is sure of to-morrow, and the day which is now passing is growing shorter with every minute; as the duties of life are many and pressing, and, if neglected, must entail misery either here or hereafter: so are we bound to avoid procrastination, as a habit more dangerous, more ruinous, than the ease with which we fall into it, leads us to calculate or expect.

The civilization of the modern European world rises far above that of ancient Greece and Rome, in all that con-

---

\* This is sometimes indifferent; e. g. "As the stars (are,) so shall thy seed be:"—a conjunction being prefixed to each grammatical sentence, each is incomplete without the other. But the former, when written or uttered, manifestly awaits the other: this other completes the construction. It will be better, therefore, to deem the former the adverb; the latter the verb.

stitutes the perfection of the human character, whether we look to the moral principles by which men profess to be guided, or the political institutions which bind them into societies; though it must be confessed that in the arts of taste, such, for instance, as sculpture and architecture, the ancients have left us models that we are happy to imitate, but cannot boast that we have yet excelled.

Whether men grow wiser as the world grows older; or the light of Christianity that shines upon us, though still but dimly and partially, enables us to see the real deformity of war: certain it is that European nations are growing less and less inclined to take up the sword against each other, and more and more disposed to reciprocate the enduring blessings of peace.

3. *Periods of complicated construction which may divide, primarily, either into nominative and verb, or into verb and adverb; (adverb and verb is the same;) but always with a preference of the one way to the other.*

Exercise and temperance | strengthen the constitution, and sweeten the enjoyments of life.

Preferably thus:

Exercise and temperance strengthen the constitution, | and, &c.

Without stopping to weigh the consequences of the life they are leading, the young, gay votaries of pleasure, | hurry onward to their ruin.

Preferably thus:

Without stopping to weigh the consequences of the life they are leading, | the young, &c.

Every man who speaks and reasons | is a grammarian, a logician, and a rhetorician, although unacquainted with the rules of art as exhibited in books and systems.

Preferably thus:

Every man who speaks and reasons is a grammarian, a logician, and a rhetorician, | although, &c.

4. *Periods of complicated construction, of which the first part, (logical adverb,) is, grammatically, an adjective agreeing with the nominative included in the verb ; which periods are capable of being easily reconstructed, so that instead of adverb and verb, the parts shall be nominative and verb.*

Oppressed by the infirmities of age, and deserted by the courtiers who daily expected the accession of his grandson, Edward the Third, notwithstanding the glories of his reign, was a miserable spectacle at its close.

By beginning the period with a portion of the latter part, namely, "Edward," &c.; and introducing the logical adverb, "Oppressed," &c., as a second logical adjective after the one terminating at "reign," the period will have the form (less eligible in this case) whose primary parts are nominative and verb; the verb commencing at "was a miserable," &c.

Seeing the many duties before us in life; considering the knowledge and the required ability which they demand; foreseeing also the disgrace that must follow a failure in them, and the reputation that rewards their due performance: who will not, while he is yet young, labour hard for the gifts of instruction, and the strength that industry brings?

Let *who*, the nominative included in the logical verb, be placed before the logical adverb,—in other words, before the logico-grammatical adjective agreeing with *who*,—and the period will have the form (here less eligible) that divides into nominative and verb.

Distracted by jarring sounds on every side, enveloped by thick darkness, fearing to go forward, hopeless of finding his way back, and reckoning upon instant destruction if he stood still; the subject of my narrative felt every nerve in his frame vibrate with fear, and a cold, clammy damp creep over his skin.

Lavish, but not generous; venturesome, but not courageous; affable, but not kind; boastful of high purposes, but muddling time away in low employments: my new companion was like a picture that pleases or dazzles at first sight, but exhibits defects of the worst kind, when we have looked at it for some time.

5. *Periods of complicated construction, of which the parts are with difficulty extricated on account of the interference of Rhetoric with the plainer forms of Logic and Grammar.*

I think that a man who has once been convicted of a deliberate falsehood, cannot afterwards claim to be trusted, or treated with honourable regard.

This is a rhetorical sentence if we divide where a good speaker would make the principal suspension pause, namely, at *falsehood*. Logic and grammar would divide at *I think*,—an active verb, to which all that follows would be the logical objective, or, in our large application of the term adverb, a logical adverb, the conjunction *that* being included as a part of it. Dropping the words *I think that*, the period divides obviously at *falsehood* into nominative and verb. In dividing at the same place under the suggestion of rhetoric, we must still consider the parts to be nominative and verb. *I think that*, is now an adverb, making sense and construction with all that follows it as its verb. But the rhetorician disregards its grammatical character, and mingles it with the nominative by the pause he makes between the nominative and verb. The example is easily reduced to a strict shape by dropping the conjunction *that*, and introducing *I think*, as an adverb between *cannot afterwards*, and *claim*: in this shape it will have an air of greater preciseness, but therefore of less ease; that is, it will be more acceptable to logic, but, for ordinary conversational purposes, less to rhetoric.

How strange that a man of so much sensibility, should be wanting in affection to a good wife, and dutiful children!

This period, if reduced from the exclamatory form which rhetoric suggests, would manifestly consist of nominative and verb; e. g. "That\* a man," &c.; "is very strange." As it stands above, the primary division may be at *strange* or at *sensibility*. The former mode yields a verb, "How strange (it is)," and an adverb: the latter division yields a nominative and a verb, with an adverb, as in the previous example, confusedly mingled with the nominative. And yet a greater rhetorical effect is produced by the latter division, namely, that which brings the voice to a suspension at the word *sensibility*. From these examples, and others which follow, it may be seen that Logic and Rhetoric operate on the structure of sentences in different directions. Logic endeavours to sort, and bring together, the parts of speech which make immediate sense and construction with each other: Rhetoric delights to distribute these parts, so that, by standing away from each other, the sense which they are instru-

---

\* Concerning the nature and office of the word *that* in a period of this kind, see PRINCIPLES (II. 282), page 154; and (III. 89), page 206.

mental, and only *instrumental*, in forming, shall not be collectible, till a certain emotive effect is consequent upon the sense. And here, it may be added, we have the theory of a difference, which has often been stated, between Greek, Latin, and other inflexional languages, and the languages of modern Europe; namely, that the former were best fitted for poetry and oratory; the latter are superior for the objects of philosophy, and calm, considerate research. For modern languages cannot distribute the parts of speech in the free manner, almost unlimited, which we find in Greek and Latin: and Rhetoric is therefore circumscribed as to this mode of producing her effects; while Logic has gained greater power, by her opportunities to enforce attention to the preliminary steps, which lead to intended conclusions.

What can long disturb the serenity of a man, who finds his happiness less in outward things, than in the comforts and delights which lie within his own breast?

This period may be reduced from its figurative, to a plain form, by putting the word *nothing* in place of *what*: and whether so made a plain period, or left in its previous rhetorical shape, the primary division will be at *man*, which division will yield a logical verb and a logical adverb. These parts, however, are made up of parts, which a stricter form would disentangle. For the subject we collect from the whole period is this: "The serenity of a man who finds his happiness, less in outward things, than in the comforts and delights that lie within his own breast:" to which the verb, suggested by the whole sentence, is this: "cannot be long disturbed."

Oh! that I were in the land of my fathers, rambling over my native fields, or reposing under the roof that sheltered my childhood!

This rhetorical period divides at *fathers*, and the parts yielded are verb and adverb. It is easily made a plain period by putting *I-wish* instead of the interjection; and it may be reduced to a more formal shape by beginning thus: "That I were in the land," &c.; and adding to the logical nominative completed at *childhood*, this logical verb: "is what I ardently wish."

Let him who desires the happiness of being loved and honoured in his old age, take care to secure that blessing by amiable and generous conduct during his youth.

In the strict description of grammar, the former part of this period is a verb imperative, governing the other part as a dependent verb infinitive; and in our large application of the term adverb, we call the latter part the adverb that makes sense and construction with the previous verb. A stricter logical form is easily deduced, thus:—"He who desires," &c., which is a logical nominative; "must take care to secure," &c., which is the correspondent logical verb.

Spring, summer, autumn, winter! how many, and how grateful, are the vicissitudes which they bring!

This rhetorical period is not strictly grammatical. The four grammatical nouns substantive are used interjectionally, and, in the division of the whole period, form a logical adverb, the remaining part of the period being the logical verb. The period is easily reduced to a stricter form, to the detriment of its rhetorical force, by substituting the four substantives for the pronoun *they*, which, in the construction, is superfluous. The period will then divide at *vicissitudes* into parts of the same name, that is, into adverb and verb, the adverb being differently constituted. The period may be again reconstructed, so that the parts shall be nominative and verb: e. g. "Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter, bring many and grateful vicissitudes." This is the logical substance of the impassioned rhetorical expression, which has been thus traced to its rational foundation.

What, Mary! why, she is the prime flower of the whole knot; among the whole amiable sisterhood, the most amiable.

This rhetorical period divides at *Mary*, the two words composing the first portion of the division, being used as one interjection, and, in our view, being an adverb, which is to make sense and construction with the rest of the period, its correspondent verb. The whole period is easily reducible to a stricter form by dispensing with three words, *what*, *why*, and *she*; when, by transposition, the expression will consist of nominative and verb; as, "Mary, among the whole amiable sisterhood the most amiable, is the prime flower of the knot."

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING—continued.

#### TRANSPOSITION.

Facility in transposing the parts of an intended sentence, is indispensable to the accomplishment of a speaker or writer; and the ability for this will be materially forwarded by such views of the construction of sentences, as the previous analyses of sentences are calculated to open. One more example of transposition is furnished hereunder, pursued into two or three forms of the same original subject-matter; and a very few sentences are added for practice: beyond which, the pupil may be left to himself, both in choosing examples for practice, and in the manner of transposing them.

History proposes much more than she can accomplish, when she undertakes to trace the progress of mankind throughout every age, without interruption or omission.

Period dividing at *accomplish* into verb and adverb.

When history undertakes, &c., she proposes, &c.

Period dividing into adverb and verb.

History, when she undertakes, &c., proposes, &c.

Period dividing into nominative and verb.

The progress of mankind, without interruption or omission, when history undertakes to trace, she proposes, &c.

Another arrangement of the period dividing into adverb and verb.

The progress of mankind, without interruption or omission, throughout every age, when history undertakes to trace it, is a purpose which embraces much more than history can possibly accomplish.

Another, and less eligible arrangement, of the period dividing into nominative and verb.

#### OTHER EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.\*

Though there may appear, to the narrow or biassed view of human reason, an original inequality in the good and evil distributed to men, we may be sure, relying on Divine justice, that such inequality is apparent only, and not real.

If we did not mingle the gall of envy, or the turbid waters of strife, or the poison of concupiscence, or other evil matter, in the current of our daily thought; life, though perhaps not uniformly sweet, would not seem so miserable an endowment as, by too many, it is felt to be.

While we are complaining of the injustice, the unkindness, the treachery, the ingratitude of others, we seldom look at our own conduct, or weigh our own actions and expressions, in order to discover how far the same charges may not fairly be brought against ourselves.

Bringing, to every subject of inquiry or examination, a mind naturally clear; and applying his faculties with a perseverance that no difficulty could tire, and no disappointment turn aside; the immortal Newton advanced to heights of scientific discovery, which no previous philosopher had attained, and perhaps none would have reached since, if he had not led the way, and made it plain.

Because we cannot have all we desire, because our hopes are extravagant, because our wishes are larger than our means of supply; we are not warranted in affirming that the world is altogether a miserable world, that life is

\* These are not included in the Key, because they can be indefinitely varied and extended.



not worth holding, and that the sooner death comes, the greater is our reason to rejoice.

By a series of inventions, which, with intervals far between at first, but with increasing frequency as time has approached our own days, the ingenuity of individual men, has conferred on the race at large, paper, and printing, and glass, and the mariner's compass, and gunpowder, and chemistry in its modern state, and the steam-engine, and all those other great inventions, by which the physical condition of mankind has been improved, and by the certainty of which, we have the hope of similar inventions, that shall still further advance the condition of our species.

---

#### PUNCTUATION.

Principles III., Chapter IV., page 220, *et seq.*

#### GRAMMATICAL PUNCTUATION.

*Period constructed of nominative and verb.*—Principles (III. 128), page 232 ; also (130,) page 233.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

1. The most valuable of possessions is a contented mind.
2. A contented mind is the most valuable of possessions.
3. The most valuable possession which reason can secure, is a contented mind.
4. A contented mind, is the most valuable possession which reason can secure.
5. A mind which calls reason to its aid, and so secures contentment, secures a happiness which avarice or ambition, however successful, can never attain.

The first period is not so long as to need any stop before the full stop. The second period has the same parts transposed, and the same reason remains for no stop but the full stop. The third period is so far lengthened as to need a comma before the end ; and only one being used, it must be placed at the principal division, namely, at that which distinguishes the logical nominative, and logical verb. The fourth period has the same parts transposed, and the same reason remains for the comma at the principal division. It is very true that in the period No. 2, the same logical nominative was not pointed off ; but if any comma is used in the sentence, it must now be pointed off, because any other comma would come at a subordinate

division : a comma, for instance, after *possession*, would distinguish the logical substantive *the most valuable possession*, and its logical adjective *which reason can secure*. And this division would be proper, if the nominative were so short as to merge in the verb, and the whole period were to divide, in consequence, not into nominative and verb, but into verb and adverb ; as, for instance, "Content is the most valuable of all the blessings, which reason can secure to man." The period, No. 4, does not properly so divide ; and therefore, if a comma is used in it, (more than one would be too many,) it must be placed at the principal division. The fifth period requires, in addition to the comma at the principal division, other commas at certain subordinate divisions ; the reasons for which must be sought for in the Principles, as indicated above.\*

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 50.)

A keen appetite never fails to render a wholesome meal delightful.

The keen appetite which hard and honest labour gives never fails to render a wholesome meal delightful.

A man who labours through the morning and comes home to a noon-tide repast with an appetite that toil has sharpened enjoys his plain food with a relish which the pampered epicure is unable to procure by his multitude of dishes and varieties of sauce.

Honesty is the best policy.

Honesty according to the old adage is the best policy.

The honest purpose of a single-minded man carried out with correspondent acts will ever be seen to overthrow the devices of the most cunning knavish policy if we look not to the immediate effect of the latter but to the ultimate event of the whole transaction.

The sun as he moves through heaven warms the earth with his fertilizing beams.

The sun as he moves through heaven or rather as the globe moves on her axis and so receives his beams on every part in turn warms this earth of ours not every where in an equal degree but upon the whole sufficiently to produce food for all things that live upon her surface.

---

\* See also hereafter, under the head *Intervening Clauses*.

## PERIOD CONSTRUCTED OF ADVERB AND VERB.

*Period conjunctionally constructed.* Principles (III. 132),  
page 233.

## MODEL EXAMPLES.

If we are prudent, we shall prosper.

We shall prosper, if we are prudent.

If we are careful and circumspect, when young; if we do not run into excesses, or, at least, if we correct excesses, when their consequences are first felt or pointed out; we shall seldom fail to reach a state of health and prosperity, that will last during life.

If we are so far thoughtful in youth, as to correct our early follies; if, for instance, having money, and to spare, we learn to use it liberally, in ceasing to spend it prodigally; or, having little money, we try to put that little to its best ends; if we never enter on an important act, without well weighing its probable consequences; nor omit a duty through indolence, timidity, or false shame: we shall lay the foundation for a series of prosperous years, should we live to see them; and, by Heaven's blessing, shall secure to ourselves as much happiness, as can be expected in this imperfect state of being.

## EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 51.)

Whether it was owing to crime or to misfortune certain it is that ancient nations seem to have become prosperous only to decline.

Whether through the constantly increasing destitution of the poor or the equally increasing luxury of the rich or the union of both as effect and cause whether as a punishment of Providence for idleness or other vice certain it is that nations in former times no sooner attained a height of prosperity than they began to decline.

Whether the advancement of the human race in earlier times required that particular nations should be eminent for a time and then sink back into the mass in order to improve the race at large or whether we must look on the fact as a universal law which will continue to work on nations that now are and nations yet to come certain it is with regard to the nations of antiquity that they have exhibited in every instance the several periods of rise of progress of decline and fall.

As there is a hollow worldly happiness, so there is a foolish worldly wisdom.

As there is a worldly happiness which God perceives to

be no other than disguised misery as there are worldly honours which in his estimation are reproach so there is a worldly wisdom which in his sight is foolishness.

Italy is so beautiful that travellers speak of it with rapture.

In Italy there is so much to interest the traveller so many historical recollections revived so much of the picturesque in nature and of the beautiful in art that we listen without wonder to the rapturous expressions of those who return from visiting that favoured country.

Though poetry is an art that addresses the imagination it is not the only one.

Though there is no art which has greater power than poetry over the imaginative and emotive part of our nature yet there are several other arts that share with it in power.

Though there is no one among the fine arts which can be compared with poetry for the extent and variety of its powers though poetry is more intellectual than any other inasmuch as it depends less on the ministry of the senses and much more on the co-operation of reason with imagination yet we must not forget that music also exercises a most powerful dominion over the emotive part of our nature and that painting and sculpture and even architecture have co-ordinate though perhaps not equal power.

---

*Period incompactly constructed, which may, nevertheless, be deemed resolvable into verb and adverb.* Principles (III. 139, 140), pages 237, 238.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

Content is the most valuable of all the blessings, which reason can secure to man.

Anger may glance into a wise man's breast, but will rest only in a fool's.

Prosperity gains friends, and adversity tries them.

In science, morals, and religion, the modern civilized world far excels the ancient.

In the science which is acquired by experimental research; in morals which have a surer resting place than mere human reason; in a religion, which, by its adaptation to man's wants, carries with it the evidence of its divine origin; the modern, &c.

**EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 52.)**

The tutor lays the foundation of his pupils' future honour by instruction and moral discipline.

By instruction and moral discipline the tutor lays the foundation of his pupils' future honour.

By instructing his pupil in divine and human science by opening to his mind the treasures of history and of natural philosophy by bringing in the aid of poetry to fix the impressions received from revealed truth and from the inductive and deductive truths that constitute moral philosophy the tutor builds up the mind which he undertakes to form and lays the foundation of future honour and happiness with regard to existence both in this world and the next.

By endeavouring to do our duty we shall take the only course that can lead us to happiness.

By doing or at least endeavouring to do our duty to God and man by acquiring an humble trust in the mercy and favour of God through the Saviour by cultivating our minds and properly employing our time and thoughts by governing our passions and our temper by correcting all unreasonable expectations from the world and from men and in the midst of worldly business habituating ourselves to calm retreat and serious recollection by such means as these it may be hoped that through the divine blessing our days shall flow in a stream as unruffled as the human state admits.

Till Bacon pointed out the fundamental error in the mode of inquiry the advances made in experimental science were comparatively small because made in a wrong direction.

The advances made in experimental science before the days of Bacon were comparatively small because till he pointed out the fundamental error in the mode of inquiry the pursuit was followed in a wrong direction.

The conduct which we dignify by the term generosity cannot be worthy of the name unless it is entirely reconcilable to our notions of justice of proper prudence of regard to public interest and to private individual claims.

A man may gain wonder and transitory applause by natural or acquired talents of an extraordinary kind but

he cannot secure respect and lasting admiration except by the application of his talents whatever they may be to the advancement of our race individually and collectively in the great interests of religion of morals or of social and international policy.

My friend reasoned with me and at last succeeded in turning me from my purpose.

My friend by many arguments endeavoured to turn me from the determination I had formed of having a full revenge for the injury I had sustained and he succeeded at last by his gentle yet forcible reasoning in inducing me to renounce my long-cherished purpose.

---

### NON-PERIODIC SENTENCES.

Principles (III. 126), page 230 ; and (133,) page 234.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

The path of truth is a plain and safe path ; that of falsehood is a perplexing maze.

He was ever ready to postpone a duty for a pleasure ; which was the sure way to the ruin he has met.

The three great enemies to tranquillity are sensuality, idleness, and superstition : sensuality, which poisons the mind, and fills it with uneasy passions ; idleness, which loads it with tediousness and disgust ; superstition, which clouds it with imaginary terrors.

The first sentence is made up of two distinct constructions ; that is to say, it is two periods ; and the semicolon is used as the lowest point that can be employed in lieu of the full point. The same remark applies to the second sentence : for though the relative *which* may seem to render the second member a constructional part of the first ; yet as the reference is not to any one grammatical term in the first member, but to a meaning included in the first member, the relative *which* is equivalent to two words, namely, *and this*, which two words, if substituted for it, would manifestly be the beginning of a new construction joined to the former by *and*. The third sentence is made up of four periods, the first of which is pointed by the colon, the next point below the full point : the remaining three are pointed by the semicolon, on account of their subordination to the first ; and also on account of an ellipsis in each, namely, *there is*, which is mentally supplied at the beginning of each to make each the construction.

To the foregoing model instances of non-periodic sentences, we might add the last example under the foregoing head, *Period incompletely constructed* ; namely, " My friend, by many arguments, endeavoured to turn me from the determination I had formed, of having a full revenge for the injury I had sustained ; and he succeeded, at last, by his gentle, yet forcible reasoning, in inducing me

to renounce my long-cherished purpose." For this example, like many others, may be esteemed an incompact periodic sentence, or a non-periodic sentence; that is, a period whose primary division is into verb and adverb; or a sentence made up of two periods. Viewed in either way, the practical effect will be, to mark the principal division by a semicolon.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 53.)

The passions are the chief destroyers of our peace they are the storms and tempests of the moral world.

Our expenses should always be measured by our income which is what we mean by the word economy.

The absence of evil is a real good exemption from pain should be a continual feast.

Heaven is the region of peace and tranquillity hell of fierceness and animosity.

Levity is frequently the forced production of folly or vice cheerfulness is the natural offspring of wisdom and virtue only.

Life with a swift though insensible course glides away and like a river which undermines its banks gradually impairs our state.

Persons who live according to order may be compared to the celestial bodies which move in regular courses and by stated laws whose influence is beneficent whose operations are quiet and tranquil.

The violent spirit like troubled waters renders back the images of things distorted and broken and communicates to them all that disordered motion which arises solely from its own agitation.

To sail on the tranquil surface of an unruffled lake and to steer a safe course through a troubled and stormy ocean require different talents and alas! human life oftener resembles the stormy ocean than the untroubled lake.

There is no mortal truly wise and restless at once wisdom is the repose of minds.

Quiet is to be obtained only by subduing the violence of the passions and quiet is the only enduring happiness which this life can yield.

Constantine was advanced to the sole dominion of the Roman world in the year of our Lord 325 and soon after openly professed the Christian faith.

The freer we feel ourselves in the presence of others the more free are they he who is free makes free.

The Celts were the original inhabitants of this our island the Saxons dispossessed them of its central parts and the Normans subsequently conquered the Saxons and mingled with without dispossessing them.

A man of indecisive character is incapable of any course that leads to a contemplated and desirable end he is swayed by every adviser he is turned from his path by every changing circumstance his mind is depressed or elated by the atmosphere of the day he is a feather blown by the winds which is much more likely to stick at last in a dunghill than to be carried where it will remain as a thing of utility or of ornament.

---

*Further examples of periods to be pointed off by the colon or semicolon ; in contrast with examples of periods to be pointed off by the appropriate stop.*

Principles (III. 134), page 234. (KEY, page 54.)

Henry the Fifth determining to contend in France for the crown of that country raised an army and equipped a fleet he marched to join the latter at Southampton he there cleared his host of three disaffected noblemen whose treason he punished he then sailed for the continent and reached Harfleur he laid siege to and took it in less than a month he set forth on his march to Calais in order to re-embark for England he was met by a French army four times as large as his own he fought and gained the battle which bears the name of Agincourt he reached Calais without further opposition and re-embarked his army with the purpose of renewing his enterprise in another year.

\*Henry the Fifth determined to contend in France for the crown of that kingdom with this view he raised an army and marched to Southampton at which place he had caused a correspondent fleet to assemble here he discovered a conspiracy against his person in which three leading men in his army were implicated the facts being clearly proved he delivered these men to punishment and then set sail

\* In copying this example, the learner must change the small into a capital letter after every full stop that he thinks proper to insert.



landing at Harfleur he immediately laid siege to the town and took it in less than a month such however was the diminished state of his army that he found himself under the necessity of re-embarking for England but he had dismissed his transports and there remained no way except Calais he began his march to this town without delay expecting to reach it without interruption the expectation failed he was met by an army four times as large as his own and the battle of Agincourt was the consequence with the laurels of that splendid victory on his brow he continued his march without further opposition he reached Calais and there re-embarked his army with the purpose of renewing his enterprise in another year.

---

#### INTERVENING CLAUSES.

Principles (III. 125), page 228.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

Charity, which is a moral sun, brightens all its objects.

Charity, like the sun, brightens all its objects.

The tutor, whose office it is to train by instruction and discipline, lays the foundation of his pupil's future honour.

The tutor, by instruction and discipline, lays the foundation of his pupil's future honour.

If a man's peace of mind be disturbed by any internal cause, in vain we load him with riches or honours.

If, by any internal cause, a man's peace of mind be disturbed, we load him, in vain, with riches or honours.

Continue, I speak to my dear child, to make virtue thy principal study.

Continue, my dear child, to make virtue thy principal study.

Hope, which is the balm of life, soothes us under every misfortune.

Hope, the balm of life, soothes us under every misfortune.

We should give a portion, and that a considerable portion, of our time to meditation.

Industry is the father, and leisure is the mother, of all the ornamental arts.

The strait thorny path goes from, the broad flowery road leads to, the regions of lasting remorse and penalty.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 55.)

Gentleness is in truth the great avenue to mutual enjoyment.

Trials in this state of being are the lot of man.

Gentleness delights above all things to alleviate distress.

If gentleness cannot dry up the falling tear it soothes at least the grieving heart.

Wherever Christianity has prevailed it has discouraged and in some degree abolished slavery.

To you my worthy benefactors I am indebted under Providence for all I enjoy.

Come companion of my toils let us courageously persevere to the end.

Content the offspring of virtue dwells both in retirement and in the active scenes of life.

Confucius the great Chinese philosopher was eminently good as well as wise.

Though unavoidable calamities make a part yet they make not the chief part of the vexations and sorrows that distress human life.

John was remarkable for always siding with the stronger William as remarkable for always siding with the more oppressed and weaker of any two opponents with whom they were called upon to interfere.

---

*Adverbial words or phrases used as conjunctions.* Principles (III. 135), page 235.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

In the first place, I am forbidden to comply; in the second, I am unable.

I will not do it; no, if you solicit me till you cannot speak longer.

To sum up the whole, our force was weak, our hopes were prostrated, and our friends estranged.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 56.)

Finally as the arguments adduced cannot be controverted let the conclusions be at once acted upon.

To say the truth he is a very good-for-nothing fellow.

I shall persevere ay in spite of all the opposition you can bring.

I do not think he is able to prevent the measure in truth I do not think he will try.

---

*Grammatical parts of speech of the same kind united in one construction, namely, in pairs, or in longer series.*  
Principles (III. 129, 130), page 233.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

John and Joseph, father and son, talked and laughed long and pleasantly. John, James, and Joseph, father, son, and grandson, talked, laughed, and jested long, pleasantly, and merrily. His plain, straightforward language, won general, cordial approbation. His plain and straightforward language, won general and cordial approbation.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 56.)

Self-conceit and presumption blast the prospect of many a youth.

Self-conceit presumption and obstinacy blast the prospect of many a youth.

In our health life possessions connections pleasures there are causes of decay imperceptibly working.

Discomposed thoughts and agitated passions poison every pleasure of life.

Discomposed thoughts agitated passions and a ruffled temper poison every pleasure of life.

Vicissitudes of good and evil of trials and consolations fill up the life of man.

Health and peace a moderate fortune and a few friends sum up all the undoubted articles of temporal felicity.

Conscious guilt renders us mean-spirited and timorous.

Conscious guilt renders us mean-spirited timorous and base.

An upright mind will never be at a loss to discover what is just and true lovely honest and of good report.

Time brings a gentle and powerful opiate to all misfortunes.

Time brings a certain a gentle a powerful opiate to all misfortunes.

The man of virtue will be trusted and esteemed.

The man of virtue will be trusted relied upon and esteemed.

To live soberly righteously and piously comprehends the whole of our duty.

Benefits should be long and gratefully remembered.

My kind considerate friend welcomed me sincerely heartily.

My kind and considerate friend welcomed me sincerely and heartily.

*Grammatical ellipsis indicated by commas.* Principles (III. 136), page 236.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

Prosperity brings idleness ; idleness, langour ; langour, a weariness of life.

Six hours' sleep for a man ; seven, for a woman ; eight, for a child ; and nine, for a pig.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 57.)

Abundance is the child of industry leisure of abundance elegance of leisure.

The babe becomes a boy the boy a youth the youth a man of full growth the vigorous man a man of declining strength and the man of declining strength an old decrepit man.

John assisted Thomas Thomas William William Henry and thus they all made their way in the world.

He whom you speak of is eminently a happy man happy for he has had and has used the best opportunities to improve his mind happy for his friends are few and faithful happy for his wife is affectionate happy for his children are good happy for his worldly affairs are prosperous happy for his religious hopes are bright and ardent.

*Sentences in which grammar is assisted by logic to the proper punctuation.* Principles (III. 131), page 233.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

Brown, the overseer and tax-gatherer, is a very impudent fellow.

Brown, the overseer, and the tax-gatherer, are drinking together at the public-house.

Charity which confines itself to almsgiving, is not true charity.

Charity, which is a sentiment of universal good will to man, testifies its genuine character by thought and words, as well as by deeds.

Circumspection and attention will bring us through the work.

Circumspection, and attention to the minor details, will bring us through the work.

**EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 57.)**

A writing-case a useful article of furniture and an ornamental one was presented to him by his uncle.

A writing-case a useful article of furniture and an ornamental one were among the presents he received.

Carefulness which restricts expense beyond a wise economy deserves blame.

Carefulness which is a word implying the opposite of carelessness always has its meaning included in the wider term prudence.

David Evans Morgan Williams along with their wives and children are to join us this evening in our festivities.

David Evans Morgan Williams is knocking at your door and wants to know why you do not open it.

The eye which is an organ of exquisite sensibility is provided with a lid for its defence.

The eye which never shed a tear can hardly be a human eye.

The artists who are very numerous in that town have formed themselves into a society.

The artists who praised that production were few in number compared to those who condemned it.

My agents a great knave and a great fool each had a hand in that transaction.

My agent a great knave and a great fool outwitted himself in that transaction.

Inform me whether that man who is known to have been on the spot was or was not the individual guilty of the deed.

Inform me whether that man who called here yesterday was on the spot.

The exact spot which was the scene of the deed is unknown.

This spot which was the scene of the deed will ever be remarkable.

Men who have no fixed occupation are liable to fall into habitual idleness.

Men who have reason given to them in place of brute instinct are accountable for doing or for neglecting to do what is placed within their power.

Patience and comfort of soul is an inward defence against outward ills.

Comfort of Thy holy word and patience will lead us to Thy kingdom.

Patience and comfort of Thy holy word will lead us to Thy kingdom.

---

*Sentences having parts which sometimes require, as intervening clauses, to be pointed off by commas; sometimes to be further marked off by the dash; sometimes to be marked off still more decidedly as parentheses. Principles (III. 137), page 236.*

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

The whole race of man, except Noah and his family, is recorded to have perished by the great flood.

The whole race of man,—Noah and his family being recorded exceptions,—perished in one great flood, which changed the state of the globe that we inhabit.

The whole race of man, (we all know that Noah and his family were saved,) perished in one great flood, which changed the state of the globe that we inhabit.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 58.)

Henry the Second except in his quarrel with Thomas à Becket was a prudent and prosperous king.

Henry the Second excluding perhaps his quarrel with Thomas à Becket was a prudent and prosperous king.

Henry the Second before I complete my assertion I must perhaps exclude his quarrel with Thomas à Becket was a prudent and prosperous king.

My friend had not a book except the Bible in any part of his house.

My friend had not a book I do not mean to say he was without a Bible in any part of his house.

Five years of scarcity with the exception of one average season were followed by ten of plenty.

Five years of scarcity I know that one of them might be called an average season were followed by ten of plenty.

If youth is passed in idleness the rest of life without more exertion to regain lost time than the generality of

people can summon is sure to be passed in the dark disgrace of ignorance.

If youth is passed in idleness the rest of life for very few people can summon the exertion required to regain the time lost in their early years is sure to be passed in the dark disgrace of ignorance.

The mightiest man as we may see by many examples and among the number by that of Caesar stabbed in the Senate-house cannot rely on the endurance of life or prosperity beyond the present moment.

The mightiest man as shown by Caesar stabbed in the Senate-house at the highest point of his exaltation cannot rely on the endurance of life or prosperity beyond the present moment.

Supposing we always kept the temper cool and the heart restrained in its desires conditions requiring nothing more than the predominance of reason over the rest of our nature there is little in the power of outward circumstances to prevent us from being permanently happy.

Supposing we always kept the temper cool and the heart restrained in its desires I am speaking of conditions which require only the predominance of reason over the rest of our nature there is little in the power of outward circumstances to prevent us from being permanently happy.

---

*Marks of quotation.* Principles (I. 46-48), page 35.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

"The world," says Shakspeare, "is still deceived with ornament."  
Shakspeare warns us that the world is still deceived with ornament.  
He said that they had quite forgotten the truth.

The words he used were these: "They have quite forgotten the truth."

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 59.)

Bacon tells us that knowledge is power.

Knowledge is power says the great Lord Bacon.

Take care of the pence says some noted economist and the pounds will take care of themselves.

Some noted economist advises people to take care of

the pence for says he the pounds will take care of themselves.

O save my country were the dying words of William Pitt.

See said Addison on his death-bed to a profligate young nobleman see in what peace a Christian can die.

Socrates on being asked what man approached the nearest to perfect happiness answered That man who has the fewest wants.

When Socrates was asked this question What man approaches the nearest to perfect happiness he pronounced in favour of him who has the fewest wants.

#### RHETORICAL PUNCTUATION.

Principles (I. 42-50), pages 34, *et seq.*; (III. 138-146), pages 237, *et. seq.*

*Interrogation point.* Principles III. 142, page 239.

#### MODEL EXAMPLES.

Are we not all subject to error? Then, why visit a brother so severely for having once gone astray?

What are the pleasures of sense, when we compare them with those of reason?

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE. (KEY, page 60.)

What is there in all the pomp of the world the enjoyments of luxury the gratification of the passions comparable to the tranquil delight of a good conscience.

Are we sure that any scheme which we build for our advancement in life is so put together that it must reach its intended purpose.

Were the ancient nations more to be blamed or more to be pitied for the blindness which made them reject Christianity on its first promulgation.

How can we expect that mankind will take advice when they will not so much as take warning.

When will nations be wise enough to know that the true interest of each lies in the prosperity of all and that the first step to that prosperity is to sheathe the sword for ever.



*Exclamation point.* Principles (III. 143), page 240.

**MODEL EXAMPLES.**

What a piece of work is man ! how noble in reason ! how infinite in faculties !

Oh ! that I could recover the time misspent in my early days !

**EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.** (KEY, page 60.)

What bloodshed does history record as the effect in every age of unrestrained ambition.

How much is a man deceived when he thinks that the eye of Providence is blind to a guilty act.

Would that I were clear of this net of difficulties in which my imprudence has involved me.

Beautiful is the sun when he rises from his eastern bed on a summer's morning and a good taste has he who will sometimes quit his own bed to witness so fine a sight.

Fair and mild is the evening star and bright the moon when she rises in her beauty but how much fairer the candid blush of a good man when his secret benevolence stands revealed how much brighter the sterling honesty of a patriot when he rises above the clouds of faction which darkened him in his early path.

---

**THE DASH.**

Principles (III. 144), page 241.

**MODEL EXAMPLES.**

These delinquents, depend upon it, I will — but first let me allay the confusion they have raised.

He is so kind a man - — indeed, I think he would not hurt a fly — in short I am sure he will not join with them to persecute you.

**EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.** (KEY, page 60.)

His knavery but perhaps the word is too strong his cunning then will certainly be too much for your simplicity.

That good man good did I say that godlike man Howard traversed a great part of the globe only to find out and relieve human misery.

Intemperance is a failing the word is too lenient it is more than a failing it is a decided vice which must bring a man at last to disgrace and ruin.

Can I believe that one whom I have fostered and promoted no I will not believe that my old and faithful servant is a party in this black conspiracy against me.

Health and strength and youth united with piety and virtue how beautiful the sight how instructive to the rest of the world how acceptable to Heaven.

*Promiscuous Examples for Exercise in Punctuation.*

(KEY, page 61.)

He who shuts out all evasion when he promises loves truth

The laurels of the warrior are dyed in blood and bedewed with the tears of the widow and the orphan

There is a certain species of religion if we can give it that name which is placed wholly in speculation and belief in the regularity of external homage or in fiery zeal about contested opinions

He loves nobly I speak of friendship who is not jealous when he has partners of love

Our happiness consists in the pursuit much more than in the attainment of any temporal good

Xenophanes who was reproached with being timorous because he would not venture his money in a game at dice made this manly and sensible reply I confess I am exceedingly timorous for I dare not commit an evil action

\* The gardens of the world produce only deciduous flowers perennial ones must be sought in the regions above roses without thorns are the growth of Paradise alone

Providence never intended that the art of living happily in this world should depend on that deep penetration that acute sagacity and those refinements of thought which few possess it has dealt more graciously with us and made happiness depend on uprightness of intention much more than on extent of capacity

The scenes which present themselves at our entering upon the world are commonly flattering whatever they be in themselves the lively spirits of the young gild every opening prospect the field of hope stretches wide before

\* In copying this, and any following example requiring the insertion of full stops, the learner must remember that after every full stop there must be a capital letter.

them pleasure puts forth her seeming blossoms on every side impelled by desire they rush onward with inconsiderate ardour prompt to decide and to choose averse to hesitate or inquire credulous because untaught by experience rash because unacquainted with danger headstrong because unsubdued by disappointment hence arise the perils to which they are exposed and which too often from want of attention to faithful admonition precipitate them into ruin irretrievable

Reputation reputation reputation Oh I have lost my reputation I have lost the immortal part of myself and what remains is bestial drunk O thou invisible spirit of wine if thou hast no name to be known by let us call thee devil Oh that men should put an enemy into their mouths to steal away their brains to be now a sensible man by-and-by a fool and presently a beast O strange every inordinate cup is unblessed and the ingredient is a devil

Where thy true treasure gold says not in me  
And not in me the diamond gold is poor

The scenes of business tell us what are men  
The scenes of pleasure what is all beside

Wo then apart if wo apart can be  
From mortal man and fortune at our nod  
The gay rich great triumphant and august  
What are they the most happy strange to say  
Convince me most of human misery

All this dread order break for whom for thee  
Vile worm O madness pride impiety

Man like the generous vine supported lives  
The strength he gains is from the embrace he gives

Know Nature's children all divide her care  
The fur that warms a monarch warm'd a bear  
While man exclaims See all things for my use  
See man for mine replies a pamper'd goose  
And just as short of reason he must fall  
Who thinks all made for one not one for all

The Almighty from his throne on earth surveys  
Nought greater than an honest humble heart

An humble heart his residence pronounc'd  
His second seat

Bliss there is none but unprecious bliss  
That is the gem sell all and purchase that  
Why go a begging to contingencies  
Not gain'd with ease nor safely lov'd if gain'd

There is a time when toil must be preferr'd  
Or joy by mistim'd fondness is undone  
A man of pleasure is a man of pains

Whatever is is right This world 'tis true  
Was made for Cæsar but for Titus too  
And which more blest who chain'd his country say  
Or he whose virtue sigh'd to lose a day

The first sure symptom of a mind in health  
Is rest of heart and pleasure felt at home

True happiness resides in things unseen  
No smiles of fortune ever bless the bad  
Nor can her frowns rob innocence of joy

Oh the dark days of vanity while here  
How tasteless and how terrible when gone  
Gone they ne'er go when past they haunt us still

If I am right thy grace impart  
Still in the right to stay  
If I am wrong Oh teach my heart  
To find that better way

Save me alike from foolish pride  
Or impious discontent  
At aught thy wisdom has denied  
Or aught thy goodness lent

He who grows aged in this world of woe  
In deeds not years piercing the depths of life  
So that no wonder waits him nor below  
Can love or sorrow fame ambition strife  
Cut to his heart again with the keen knife  
Of silent sharp endurance he can tell  
Why thought seeks refuge in lone caves yet rife  
With airy images and shapes which dwell  
Still unimpair'd though old in the soul's haunted cell

Patron of all those luckless brains  
 That to the wrong side leaning  
 Indite much metre with much pains  
 And little or no meaning  
 Ah why since oceans rivers streams  
 That water all the nations  
 Pay tribute to thy glorious beams  
 In constant exhalations  
 Why stooping from the noon of day  
 Too covetous of drink  
 Apollo hast thou stol'n away  
 A poet's drop of ink

Self-flatter'd unexperienc'd high in hope  
 When young with sanguine cheer and streamers gay  
 We cut our cable launch into the world  
 And fondly dream each wind and star our friend  
 All in some darling enterprise embark'd  
 But where is he can fathom its event  
 Amid a multitude of artless hands  
 Ruin's sure perquisite her lawful prize  
*Some* steer aright but the black blast blows hard  
 And puffs them wide of hope with hearts of proof  
 Full against wind and tide *some* win their way  
 And when strong effort has deserv'd the port  
 And tugg'd it into view 'tis won 'tis lost  
 Though strong their oar still stronger is their fate  
 They strike and while they triumph they expire  
 In stress of weather *most some* sink outright  
 O'er them and o'er their names the billows close  
 To-morrow knows not they were ever born  
*Others* a short memorial leave behind  
 Like a flag floating when the bark's engulf'd  
 It floats a moment and is seen no more  
 One Cæsar lives a thousand are forgot  
 How *few* beneath auspicious planets born  
 With swelling sails make good the promis'd port  
 With all their wishes freighted yet e'en these  
 Freight with all their wishes soon complain  
 Free from misfortune not from nature free  
 They still are men and when is man secure  
 As fatal *time* as *storm* the rush of years

Beats down their strength their numberless escapes  
 In ruin end and now their proud success  
 But plants new terrors on the victor's brow  
 What pain to quit the world just made their own  
 Their nests so deeply down'd and built so high  
 Too low they build who build beneath the stars

---

PROSODY.

## EXERCISES IN SCANNING.

## MODEL EXAMPLES.

*Iambic Verse.*

Behold  
 How short a span  
 Was long enough of old  
 To measure out the life of man.

A line of one iambus; a line of two iambs; a line of three; a line of four.

Disdaining,  
 Complaining,  
 Consenting,  
 Repenting.

Lines of one iambus, with a rebounding syllable.

Tumult cease,  
 Sink to peace.

Acephalous lines of two iambs.

Rich the treasure,  
 Sweet the pleasure.

Acephalous lines of two iambs, with rebounding syllables.

Straight mine eye hath caught new pleasures  
 While the landscape round it measures.

Acephalous lines of four iambs, with rebounding syllables. In the former line, the second and the fourth feet (mine eye: new pleas-:) are spondees, or iambs by systole, as the reader's taste may determine:

Be wise to-day: 'tis madness to defer.

The heroic line of five feet, having a pyrrhic (nēss tō) in the fourth place.

Farewell, a long farewell to all my greatness.

The heroic line with a rebounding syllable.

A peace above all earthly dignities.

The heroic line with a spondee in the third place (āll ēarth-) and

with diastole on the last syllable; that is, with imaginary full force of voice on that syllable, though it is customarily under remitted or slack force.\*

Oh! who can hold a fire in his hand.

The heroic line with a spondee in the first place (ōh whō); with diæresis in the third (a fi-); and a pyrrhic in the fourth (ēr-in).

With open mouth swallowing a tailor's news.

The heroic line with a trochee by synæresis (swällo'wīng) in the third place.

Thy realm for ever lasts, thy own Messiah reigns.

A line of six iambs, denominated an Alexandrine when it occurs among heroic lines.

*Anapestic Verse.*

But in vain  
They complain.

Lines of one anapest.

If sorrows corrode us  
And cares overload us.

Acephalous lines of two anapests with rebounding syllables.

Sorrows corroding us,  
Cares overloading us.

Lines of two anapests, doubly acephalous, and doubly rebounding.

With thanks to my friends for their care and their breeding,  
Who taught me betimes to love working and reading.

Acephalous lines of four anapests with double-endings, and occasional systole, as on the word *love* in the third place of the second line.

*Verse in which the two standard feet are mixed.*

Tell us a story, old Robin Gray,  
This merry Christmas time;  
We are all in our glory; so tell us a story  
Either in prose or in rhyme.

The first line acephalous, its second foot (ūs ā stō-) an anapest; its third foot (rý ōld) an iambus; its fourth (Rōbin Grāy) an anapest by systole at its beginning. The second line acephalous, its second foot (mérrý Chris-) an anapest by systole at its beginning; the third foot an iambus: or this second line may be read otherwise, and therefore

---

\* Nor must the reading of the line violate custom: a good reader will be able to sustain the metre without any evident deviation from usage.

otherwise scanned; namely, as an iambic line of three feet with a spondee (this *mēr-*) in the first place. The third line is one of four anapests with a rebounding syllable. The fourth line, one of three anapests, is doubly acephalous.

Earth, thou mother of numberless children, the nurse and the mother,  
Hail! O goddess, thrice hail! Blest be thou! and, blessing, I hymn  
thee.

These lines, which pretend to imitate Latin hexameters, derive their metrical effect, such as it is, from a mixture of the usual English feet. The first foot of the former line is an acephalous iambus or anapest; the second foot, an iambus; the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth feet are anapests, of which the last has a rebounding syllable. The first foot of the latter line is also an acephalous iambus or anapest; the second foot, an iambus; the third, an anapest; the fourth, an iambus, (if, as is meant, full force is laid on *be*;) the fifth and sixth are anapests, of which the last has a rebounding syllable.

#### EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

##### *Iambic Verse.*

What place is here?  
What scenes appear!  
To me the rose  
No longer glows.

In places far and near,  
Or famous or obscure,  
Where wholesome is the air,  
Or where the most impure!

War, he sung, is toil and trouble,  
Honour but an empty bubble.

And see the rivers how they run  
Through woods and meads, in shade and sun,  
Sometimes swift and sometimes slow,  
Wave succeeding wave, they go  
A various journey to the deep,  
Like human life to endless sleep.

When all thy mercies, O my God,  
My rising soul surveys,  
Transported with the view, I'm lost  
In wonder, love, and praise.



Then, at the last and only couplet, fraught  
 With some unmeaning thing they call a thought,  
 A needless Alexandrine ends the song,  
 That, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along.

Two nights together had these gentlemen,  
 Marcellus and Bernardo, on their watch,  
 In the dead waste and middle of the night, been  
 Thus encounter'd : a figure like your father,  
 Arm'd at all points exactly, cap-à-pie,  
 Appears before them, and, with solemn march,  
 Goes slow and stately by them : thrice he walk'd  
 By their oppress'd and fear-surpris'd eyes.

How many blessed groups this hour are bending  
 Through England's primrose meadow paths their way  
 Toward spire and tower, 'midst shadowy elms ascending,  
 Where the sweet chimes proclaim the hallow'd day.

Ye good men of the commons,  
 With loving hearts and true,  
 Who stand by the bold tribunes  
 That still have stood by you,  
 Come, make a circle round me,  
 And mark my tale with care,  
 A tale of what Rome once hath borne,  
 Of what Rome yet may bear.

*Anapestic Verse.*

He is gone on the mountain,  
 He is lost to the forest,  
 Like a summer-dried fountain,  
 When our need was the sorest :  
 The autumn winds rushing,  
 Waft the leaves that are searest,  
 But our flower was in flushing  
 When blighting was nearest.  
 We sat down and wept by the waters  
 Of Babel, and thought of the day  
 When our foe, in the hue of his slaughters,  
 Made Salem's high places his prey ;  
 And ye, oh ! her desolate daughters,  
 Were scatter'd, all weeping, away.

From the last hill that looks on thy once holy dome  
 I beheld thee, O Sion! when render'd to Rome:  
 'Twas thy last sun went down, and the flames of thy fall  
 Flash'd back on the last glance I gave to thy wall.  
 Ne'er tell me of glories serenely adorning  
 The close of the day, the calm eve of our night;  
 Give me back, give me back, the wild freshness of morning;  
 Her clouds and her tears are worth evening's best light.  
 Laughing and joking unspitefully,  
 Frolicking all so delightfully,  
 Why, with scowl and with frown, are you come,  
 Thus to darken us, grim Mister Glum?

*Verse with the standard feet mixed.*

A sensitive plant in a garden grew,  
 And the young winds fed it with silver dew,  
 And it open'd its fan-like leaves to the light,  
 And clos'd them beneath the kisses of night.  
 I come, I come; ye have call'd me long,  
 I come o'er the mountains with light and song;  
 You may trace my steps o'er the wakening earth,  
 By the winds which tell of the violet's birth,  
 By the primrose stars in the shadowy grass,  
 By the green leaves opening as I pass.  
 No stir in the air, no stir in the sea,  
 The ship was still as she could be,  
 Her sails from heaven receiv'd no motion,  
 Her keel was steady in the ocean,  
 Without either sign or sound of their shock,  
 The waves flow'd over the Inchcape-rock;  
 So little they rose, so little they fell,  
 They did not move the Inchcape-bell.

*In the hexameter rises the fountain's silvery column,  
 In the pentameter, aye falling in melody back.*

The night is chill; the forest bare.  
 Is it the wind that moaneth bleak?  
 There is not wind enough in the air  
 To move away the ringlet curl

From the lovely lady's cheek ;  
There is not wind enough to twirl  
The one red leaf, the last of its clan,  
That dances as often as dance it can,  
Hanging so light, and hanging so high,  
On the topmost twig that looks up at the sky.

---

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX

TO THE

### ACCIDENCE, PRINCIPLES, AND MANUAL.


---

[The Roman or Arabic figures not included in parenthesis indicate the page of the *Accidence* (the roman referring to the *Accidence*) or of the *Principles*:—in the added references within parenthesis, the number printed in Roman capitals, I., II., III., or IV., means the Part of Grammar, I. Orthography, II. Etymology, III. Syntax, or IV. Prosody, to which the number joined to it belongs; the latter number indicating the Principle or Principles:—the *MANUAL* is always referred to by name, and the figures following the name imply the page.]

---

- A** as a letter, how pronounced, 6 (I. 19):—Exercise on the various orthography of its proper sound, *MANUAL*, 31.
- as terminating a word, what the usual character and meaning of such word, 51 (II. 19); its meaning in chemistry as terminating a word, 100 (II. 163).
- as a Saxon Eng. prefix, 63 (II. 46, 47).
- as a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- as a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75); and 74 (II. 78).
- as a form of the indefinite article, when proper, and when the other form, *an*, is proper, xxvii.; and 117 (II. 214):—Its syntax as an article, 170 (III. 28):—Its apparent anomaly explained in such phrases as *a few men*, *a hundred reasons*, xxxvii.; 193 (III. 71); and 209 (III. 93).
- A-sleep**, **a-miss**, &c., the real grammatical character of such words, xxvi. ("The test of an adjective," &c.); also 116 (II. 207); and 191 (III. 64).
- Ab- Abs-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, the same as *a*, 72 (II. 74).
- **Able**, **-ible**, terminations added to words, with occasional elisions and other changes, originating a class of formative adjectives, exercise on, *MANUAL*, 39 and 43.
- Absolute**, the case of nouns so called, which in English is always nominative, xxx.; and 166 (III. 10):—The infinitive absolute, xxxi. (3); and 174 (III. 38):—The true grammatical character of a phrase absolute, 196 (III. 78):—Exercise on the case absolute, *MANUAL*, 69.

- Abstract nouns, iv. ; and 108 (II. 175, 176).
- Ac-, a form of the prefix *ad*, 102 (II. 164).
- Accent, wide effect of the absence of, in changing the sounds of letters, 9 (I. 19, twelfth line at page 9):—The mark of accent, 35 (I. 46, 47):—Effect of, in uniting words by dropping certain accents, by an *enclitic* accent, and by an accent that shortens a syllable, 103 (II. 165–167):—Principal and secondary accents distinguished by the single and double marks (*ib.*):—Inflectional accent explained, 246 (IV. 5–7):—Syllables distinguished as full or slack according as they are under or not under cadential accent, 252 (IV. 14, 15):—Essential places of cadential accent in the construction of English verse, 257 (IV. 24).
- Accidence, meaning of, in the practical teaching of grammar, xxix.
- Accusative, the case so named in Latin grammar, and which in English is called objective, vi. ; and 114 (II. 203). See *Objective*.
- Acephalous, lines so called in verse, 255 (IV. 21).
- Act, *see* Scene.
- Active, its meaning in grammar when said of a verb, ix. ; and 119 (II. 220):—Of neuter verbs which are said to have an active and a passive form, 120 (II. 223) ; and 149 (II. 269):—Of verbs which being originally neuter are used as active verbs, 120 (II. 225):—Of active verbs which are used so that they may be said to be *active unapplied*, 121 (II. 227):—Exercises on the tenses of, MANUAL, 47–51.—On government by verbs active, MANUAL, 79, 80.
- Ad-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- Address, nominative in direct address, corresponding to vocative in Latin grammar, vi. ; xxix. (4, at bottom of the page xxix. ) ; and 166 (III. 9):—Logical noun in direct address, 193 (III. 68):—Exercise on noun nominative in direct address, MANUAL, 69.
- Adjective, explained and defined, xx. (4) ; xxvi. ; 39 (II. 5) ; and 116 (II. 207):—Adjectives borrowed from verbs in the shape of their two participles, 159 (II. 288):—The ways in which an adjective enters into construction, xxxii. :—Concord of the adjective with its substantive, 170 (III. 25–30):—Adjective used substantively and infinitively, 171 (III. 32, 33):—Logical adjective, 191 (III. 64) ; and 193 (III. 71):—Interference of logic with the concord of adjective and substantive, 208 (III. 92–94):—Exercises in the syntax of adjectives, and of words or phrases used adjectively, MANUAL, 74–77. For other references, *see* Degrees of Comparison.
- Adjective pronouns possessive, distinguished from personal pronouns possessive, xxii. ; 115 (II. 206) ; 117 (II. 209) ; and 167 (13, 14):—Syntax of, in English grammar, 170 (III. 30).
- Adverb, explained and defined, xx. (6) ; xxvi. ; li. , lii. ; 41 (II. 7) ; and 149 (II. 270–272):—Adverbs when they become conjunctions, 155 (II. 284):—The ways in which an adverb enters into construction, xxxiv. :—Concord of adverb with verb, &c., 176 (III. 44, 45):

- Why the proper place of an adverb in construction is frequently doubtful, 189 (III. 62):—Logical adverb, 191 (III. 64); and 195 (III. 76):—Exercises for converting adjectives into adverbs by adding *ly*, MANUAL, 38; in the syntax of adverbs, MANUAL, 76. For further references, *see* Degrees of Comparison.
- Adverbial phrases explained, xxxvii.; and 195 (III. 76–78).
- Adversative, an epithet of the conjunction *but*, 154 (II. 281).
- Æ, a Latin Eng. digraph, 50 (II. 14).
- Aer-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 94).
- Af-, a form of the prefix *ad*, 102 (II. 164).
- Affinity of suffixes in Latin Eng. and Greco-Lat. Eng. words, 92 (II. 141–144).
- After-, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 65 (II. 51).
- Ag-, a form of the prefix *ad*, 102 (II. 164).
- Agogue, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 148).
- Agreement, *see* Concord.
- Air, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).
- Al-, sometimes a prefix of Arabic origin, 73 (II. 76); more frequently one of the forms of *ad*, 102 (II. 164); very often a contraction of *all*, and therefore a Saxon Eng. prefix, 67 (II. 62).
- Algy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 147).
- Alla-ge, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 149).
- Alphabet, the letters of, in their proper order, 4 (I. 15).
- Amb-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 82).
- Amphi-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- An, as a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 73 (II. 77).
- as a form of the indefinite article, when proper instead of *a*, xxvii.; and 117 (II. 214).
- And, its usual effect in construction, and consequent distinction from *or*, 153 (II. 280); and 200 (III. 85):—Exercises on the various effect of these conjunctions, MANUAL, 54 (1), and 64, “*Join*,” &c.
- Ana-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- Analysis, grammatical, on the true principles of language, MANUAL 101.
- Anapest, one of the two standard feet of English verse, 253 (IV. 16).
- Anapestic verses, examples of, MANUAL, 146 and 148.
- Ance, { how words terminating in, have for the most part altered the  
spelling into *-ence* and *-ent*, 21 (I. 30); also 52 (II. 20);
- Ant, { and 61 (II. 41).
- Anomalies of Logic and Grammar justified to some extent by Rhetoric, 217 (III. 114–118).
- Ante-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- Antecedent, the previous noun so called to which a relative pronoun refers, 109 (II. 178).  *See* Correlative.
- Anthropy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 147).

- Anti-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- Antistrophe, one of the three recurring stanzas of the regular ode, 265 (IV. 32).
- Ap-, a form of the prefix *ad*, as in *append*, 102 (II. 164).
- Apo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- Apostrophe, one of the occasional marks in writing, 35 (I. 46, 47):—Its proper use as a sign of the possessive case, vii.; and 114 (II. 204).
- Apparent government of nouns by interjections, 180 (III. 53).
- Appellative, a term applied to nouns otherwise called common. *See* Common Nouns.
- Apposition, noun nominative in immediate, **xxix.** (2); and 165 (III. 7); noun nominative in apposition by means of a verb neuter, **xxix.** (3); and 165 (III. 8):—Noun objective in apposition, **xxx.** (3); and 168 (III. 18):—A logical noun in apposition, 193 (III. 67):—Interference of logic with the concord of nouns in apposition, 208 (III. 91):—Exercises on nominatives in apposition, **MANUAL**, 67, 68.
- Aque-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).
- Ar-, a form of the prefix *ad*, as in *arrogate*, 102 (II. 164).
- Arch-, } a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix and suffix, 72 (II. 75); 80 (II. 90); and 95 (II. 147).
- Archy, }
- Arithm, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 149).
- Articles, the two, namely definite and indefinite, shown to be adjectives, **xxvii.**; and 40 (II. 5, 6):—The proper use of *an* for *a*, 117 (II. 214):—The syntax of the article *a*, 170 (II. 28):—Explanation of such phrases as *a few men*, *a hundred reasons*, 193 (III. 71); and 209 (III. 93):—Exercise on the syntax of, **MANUAL**, 74, 75.
- As-, a form of the prefix *ad*, as in *assign*, 102 (II. 164).
- As, a conjunction often used in construction as a relative pronoun, **xxiii.** (last paragraph); and 155 (II. 283):—The conjunctions that correspond with it, **liii.**; and 177 (III. 48).
- Aspirate, an element of pronunciation so named, 3 (I. 5):—Of certain letters which, though accompanied by *h*, are never aspirated in good English, 14 (fourth line from the top).
- Aster, its signification and origin in such formatives as *poetaster*, *grammaticaster*, 59 (II. 39, towards the bottom of the page).
- Asterisk, an occasional mark, 35 (I. 46); its use, 35 (I. 49):—Asterisks that connect broken passages, 35 (I. 44).
- At-, a form of the prefix *ad*, as in *attest*, 102 (II. 164).
- At, a preposition, its use discriminated before names of places, 153 (II. 279).
- Ate, a significant termination in modern chemistry, 101 (II. 163).
- Atra-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).
- Auxiliary, verbs so named, **x.**; the real auxiliaries distinguished from *to let* and *to be*, which are deemed auxiliary verbs only for

convenience in teaching, xiv.; and 134 (II. 251):—Conjugations of the auxiliary verbs, x.-xiv.

**B**, its sound, 4 (I. 13):—Etymological character of words that terminate in it, 54 (II. 26).

—**Bark**, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).

**Bary-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).

—**Base**, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).

**Bd-**, an initial combination found only in words from Hebrew through the Greek, 50 (II. 17).

**Be-**, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 63 (II. 46); has acquired in some instances an import not originally its own, 75 (II. 79).

**Be**, a verb, conjugated at full, xiv.-xvi.:—The original verbs from which it is derived, 121 (foot note); and 133 (II. 250):—Proved not to be a real auxiliary verb, though admitted as one for convenience in teaching, 134 (II. 251):—Its forms in the subjunctive mood accounted for, 145 (II. 265-267):—Examples of various concord when it stands between nominatives in apposition, 202 (II. 86).

**Bel-**, a Norman Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 68).

**Bene-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 80 (II. 89).

**Bi-**, } a Latin Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 82).

**Bis-**, }

—**Blepsy**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).

—**Bole**,

—**Boly**, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 97 (II. 150).

—**Bolous**,

**Bon-**, a Norman Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 68).

—**Bote**, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

—**Born**,

—**Bourn**, } suffixes of the same meaning in English names of places,

—**Burn**, } 70 (II. 71).

**Bracket**, an orthographical mark, its form and use, 35 (I. 46-49).

—**Burgh**, } suffixes of the same meaning in English names of places,

—**Bury**, } 70 (II. 71).

—**Burse**, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).

**But**, a word of various etymology, 154 (II. 281).

**By**, a preposition in common use, lii.; and 153 (II. 279):—Is the original, in some words, of the prefix *be-*, 63 (II. 46):—Its meaning as a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).

**C**, its two sounds, 5 (I. 15); and 9 (eighth line from the bottom, "Thus far," &c.):—Its sound in *ocean*, &c., 10 (tenth line from the top):—When the letter *c* should, and when it should not, be followed by *h* in spelling a word, 19 (I. 27); and 54 (II. 27):—When



- we should write *ction* in terminating certain words, and when *xion*, 22 (I. 33).
- Cadential, a term applied to accent, in distinction to inflectional, 247 (IV. 7).
- Cado, a Latin verb distinguished from *cedo* and *cædo*, as originating certain suffixes, 84 (II. 99).
- Cassura, *see* Cesura.
- Can, a verb, conjugated, xii. :—Its classification as a verb irregular, 129 (II. 244) :—A sign of the potential mood, 141 (II. 257).
- Capitals, proper use of, in writing, 36 (I. 51) :—Exercise for learning the use of, MANUAL, 29.
- Caret, a character in writing, its form and use, 35 (I. 46, 48).
- Carni-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).
- Case, its meaning as a term of grammar exemplified by the Latin cases, vi. :—On case in English grammar, 114 (II. 203-205) :—On pronouns in the possessive case,—when they must be called *personal pronouns possessive*, and deemed nominatives or objectives in construction,—and when called *adjective pronouns possessive*, and deemed adjectives in construction, xxii., xxiii. ; and 115 (II. 206) :—On nouns in the nominative case, xxix. ; and 164 (III. 4-11) :—On nouns in the possessive case, xxx. ; and 167 (III. 12-15) :—On nouns in the objective case, xxx. ; and 168 (III. 16-18).
- Caster, } suffixes of the same meaning in English names of places,  
 -Cester, } 70 (II. 71).  
 -Chester, }
- Cata-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- Cede, a Latin Eng. suffix, the same as the Norman English, *-ceed*, 84 (II. 99).
- Ceed, *see* above.
- Ceive, a Norman Eng. suffix, 84 (II. 98).
- Cept, a Latin Eng. suffix, *ib*.
- Cele, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 150).
- Cent-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 86).
- Cesura, a term in prosody having two applications, 257 (IV. 24) ; and 259 (IV. 25-27).
- Cess, a Latin Eng. suffix, 84 (II. 99).
- Cester, *see* Caster.
- Ch, a digraph of threefold etymology, and having three correspondent modes of being sounded, 50 (II. 16).
- Chace, proper spelling of, as a subs., 21 (I. 31).
- Chemistry, significant component syllables in words belonging to, 100 (II. 163) :—Concerning the two modes of spelling the words, *see* “-Chemy or -Chymy” below ; or the last example at page 23 of PRINCIPLES.

- Chemý, or -Chymý, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 147).
- Chester, *see* -Caster.
- Chilia-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 86).
- Chord, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 150).
- Chronism, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 97 (II. 150).
- Chronous, }
- Cide, a Latin Eng. suffix of different origin and meaning in different words, 85 (II. 99).
- Cident, a Latin Eng. suffix, *ib*.
- Cipient, a Latin Eng. suffix, 84 (II. 98).
- Circum-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- Cise, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 85 (II. 99).
- Cision, }
- Ck, final letters common in many words formerly, that now drop the *k*, 19 (I. 27).
- Clausular, members of periods so denominated, which in construction are perfect sentences, 228 (III. 125).
- Cn, an initial combination found only in words from the Latin, 50 (II. 17).
- Co-, a form of the prefix *con*, as in co-incide, 102 (II. 164).
- Coct, a Latin Eng. suffix, 85 (II. 100).
- Cog-, } forms of the prefix *con*, as in *cognate*, *collect*, *commit*, 102
- Col-, } (II. 164).
- Com-, }
- Common nouns, explained, iii.; and 107 (II. 171, 173, 174, 176, 177).
- Common gender, explained, vi., and 112 (II. 194).
- Comparative, } *see* Degrees of Comparison.
- Comparison, }
- Compounding of words, effects of, 161 (II. 292).
- Con-, a Latin Eng. and Norman Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- Concord, explained, 163 (III. 2):—The three Concords, 198 (III. 81):—Concord of noun and verb, 164 (III. 4); 198 (III. 82-89):—Concord of nouns nominative in apposition, of nouns in direct address, and nouns in the case absolute, 165 (III. 6-11); and 208 (III. 91):—Concord of nouns objective in apposition, 168 (III. 18):—Concord of noun and pronoun, 168 (III. 19-24); and 208 (III. 90):—Concord of noun substantive and its definitive, 170 (III. 25, 31); and 208 (III. 92, 94):—Concord as it regards verb and verb, 171 (III. 34, 35):—Concord of adverb with verb, 176 (III. 44, 45):—Concord of conjunctions with each other, 177 (III. 48-52):—Exercises in syntactical concord, MANUAL, 59-77; and 85-91.
- Conditional, individual forms of verbs to express the tense so named, 144 (II. 262):—Exercises on conditional forms of verbs, MANUAL, 51.

Conjugation of the verb *May*, x.; of *Shall*, xi.; of *Will*, *ib.*; of *Can*, xii.; of *Must*, *ib.*; of *Do*, as an auxiliary verb, *ib.*; of *Have*, as an auxiliary verb, xiii.; of *Be*, xiv.; of *Take*, in the active voice, xvii.—The principles of conjugation with regard to English verbs, 134 (II. 251-259).

Conjunctions, explained for young learners, xxi. (8); and xxviii. :—Lists of long-established, and of such as having more recently become conjunctions, are less generally acknowledged, lii. (last line of the page);—How conjunctions enter into construction, xxxiv.; and MANUAL, 110 :—Etymological development of, 43 (II. 10); and 151 (II. 275);—Definition of, 151 (II. 277);—Different effect on construction of *and* and *or*, 153 (II. 280); and 200 (III. 85);—Further consideration of conjunctions classed under the heads of copulative and disjunctive, 154 (II. 281);—On relative pronouns that become conjunctions, conjunctions that become relatives, and adverbs that become conjunctions, 154 (II. 282-284);—Syntax or correspondence of conjunctions, 177 (III. 48-51);—On the effect of conjunctions in coupling like forms of speech, 180 (III. 52);—Logical conjunction individual, 195 (III. 75);—Exercises for inserting proper conjunctions, MANUAL, 54 (1) (2) (3);—Exercises on the various effect of conjunctions that join nouns nominative, MANUAL, 64; “*Join*,” &c.—Exercises on the concord of conjunctions, MANUAL, 86, 87.

Connectives, a term applied to prepositions and conjunctions, 151 (II. 275-277).

Consonant, meaning of, as applied to sounds, 3 (I. 4-14); as applied to letters, 4 (I. 15);—Etymological character of certain consonants, single, and in combination, 50 (II. 15-18); Exercises in the orthography of consonants, MANUAL, 37-44.

Construction, the proper business of Grammar,—the joining of words to form sense being the business of Logic, and the refining on the forms of language in order to delight and persuade, being the business of Rhetoric, 1 (I. 1); 181 (III. 54); and 220 (III. 119);—Imperfect construction sometimes licensed, xxxvii.; and 218 (115);—Peculiar construction of a phrase formed with the auxiliary *have*, and the perfect participle of a verb, 175 (III. 40);—Peculiarity of construction when *that* without demonstrative force (“*That warm climates*,” &c., “*should*,” &c.) introduces a logical nominative, 206 (III. 89);—Construction explained of sentences having the form, “*The more (or the less), &c., the better (or, &c.) &c.*,” 214 (III. 103). ☞ *Other references to forms and laws of construction will be found under the several heads of Noun, Verb, Adjective, &c. See also Syntax.*

Contra-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 65 (II. 52); and 72 (II. 74).

Conversion, of verbs into nouns, 157 (II. 286);—Of nouns into verbs, 158 (II. 287);—Of adjectives into verbs, 159 (II. 288);—Of nouns subs. into nouns adj., 160 (II. 289);—Of nouns adj. into nouns subs., *ib.* (II. 290);—Of adjectives into adverbs, *ib.* (II. 291);—Exercise on the conversion of verbs into nouns and nouns into

- verbs, **MANUAL**, 45 :—Of adjectives into verbs and verbs into adjectives, 46 :—Of substantives into adjectives and adjectives into substantives, *ib.*
- Copulative, an epithet of the conjunction *and*, vaguely applied to some other conjunctions, 153 (II. 280, 281).
- Cor-, a form of the prefix *con*, 102 (II. 164).
- Correlative, name of a part of speech having reference to another part, as pronoun to its antecedent, antecedent to its pronoun, 169 (III. 20, 21).
- Correspondence among the parts of a sentence, exercises upon, **MANUAL**, 85-91.
- Cosm, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 150).
- Could, *see* Can.
- Count, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).
- Counter-, a Norman Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 64).
- Coupling, a term applied in syntax to the joining of like forms of speech, 180 (III. 52) :—Exercises upon, **MANUAL**, 85-89.
- Course, a Norman Eng. suffix, 85 (II. 101).
- Cracy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 147).
- Craft, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).
- Crease, a Norman Eng. suffix, 85 (II. 100).
- Creet, a Norman Eng. suffix, *ib.*
- Crete, a Latin Eng. suffix, *ib.*
- Ct, an initial combination found only in words from the Greek, 50 (II. 17).
- Cum-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- Cumb, }  
 -Cumbent, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 85 (II. 101).  
 -Curo, }  
 -Current, }  
 -Cuss, }
- D, its sound, 4 (I. 13) :—Etymological character of words that terminate in it, 55 (II. 28).
- Dagger, an occasional mark, 35 (I. 46) :—Its use, *ib.* (I. 49).
- Danish, little effect of, in the changes of the Saxon language, 47 (II. 12).
- Dash, its uses in writing, 34 (I. 44); 232 (III. 128); 236 (III. 137, last example); and 241 (III. 144).
- Dative, name of a case in Latin grammar, vi.
- De-, a Norman Eng. and Latin Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 67); also, 72 (II. 74); and 75 (II. 79).
- Dean, } suffixes of the same meaning in English names of places,  
 -Den, } 70 (II. 71).

**Deca-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 85).

**Decem-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, *ib.*

**Declination**, of a Latin noun, vi.; of the English personal pronouns, vii.; of the relative *who*, *ib.*; of proper names, *ib.*; of a common noun with a regular plural, *ib.*; of a common noun made plural by *es*, viii.; of a common noun made plural by changing *y* into *ies*, *ib.*; of a common noun made plural otherwise than by *s*, *ib.*; of nouns abstract, *ib.*

**-Deem**, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

**Definite**, the article so called, xxvii.; and 117 (II. 214):—A certain tense of verbs so distinguished, xvii.-xx.; and 138 (II. 252).

**Definitive**, a term applied to adjectives, articles, and adjective pronouns, 116 (II. 207):—Concord of with the noun substantive, 170 (III. 25-31); and 208 (III. 92-94):—Exercises on the agreement of, with the word defined, **MANUAL**, 74-77.

**Degrees of comparison**, how many and how formed, xxvi. (bottom of the page); and 118 (II. 215):—On adjectives and adverbs that form the degrees irregularly, 118 (II. 216); for the list of which see li., lii., No. 5:—Construction of a sentence in which the comparative degree is followed by *than*, 179 (III. 51):—Double comparative or superlative sometimes licensed, 218 (III. 117):—Exercises for forming, **MANUAL**, 37.

**Demi-**, a Norman Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 81).

**-Demic**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 151).

**Demonstrative**, adjective or pronoun so called, xxiv.; and 117 (II. 213):—Syntax of, with its substantive, 170 (III. 26).

**-Den**, see **Dean**.

**Detach**, a term proposed for use in distinguishing dividual from individual parts of speech, xxxv.:—How to detach a relative sentence from the sentence of which it is a part, 169 (III. 22).

**Dexter-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 92).

**Dent-**,  
**Deuter-**, } Greco-Lat. Eng. prefixes, 77 (II. 82); and 101 (II. 163).

**Di-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).

**\*Dia-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).

**Diæresis**, its proper mark and use in writing, 35 (I. 46, 47):—Its audible effect on syllables as counted by the eye, 251 (IV. 12).

**Diastole**, its effect, that of making a slack syllable full, 255 (iv. 19).

**-Dict**, a Latin Eng. suffix, 85 (II. 102).

**Difficulties**, certain phrases presenting difficulty explained for young learners of grammar, xxxviii. (at bottom of the page).

**Digraph**, when the term is properly used instead of *diphthong*, 5 (I. 18):—Etymological character of the vowel digraph, 49 (II. 14); of certain consonant digraphs, 50 (II. 15-18).

**Diphthong**, its true meaning as distinguished from digraph, 5 (I. 18).

- Dis-**, a Norman, and Latin Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 67); and 72 (II. 74); also, 76 (II. 82); and 80 (II. 89).
- Disjunctive**, an epithet of the conjunction *or*, vaguely applied to some other conjunctions, 153 (II. 280, 281).
- Distich**, its meaning in Prosody, 263 (IV. 29).
- Distributive**, adjective or pronoun so called, xxv.; and 109 (II. 178):—Syntax of, with its substantive, 170 (III. 29):—Concord of the correlative with a distributive exemplified, 168 (III. 19); and 200 (III. 84, seventh line of the page).
- Dividual**, its meaning as applied to a verb, viii. (a “verb often de-putes,” &c.); and 137 (II. 251, “in these changes,” &c., sixth line of the page 137):—Logical part of speech *dividual*, distinguished from logical part of speech *individual*, xxxv.:—(“But a logical,” &c., eighth line of the page); and 192 (III. 65).
- Divisions**; general divisions of grammar explained, 1 (Introd. 2).
- Do**, as an auxiliary conjugated, xii.:—Its presence under the form *to*, as a sign of the infinitive mood, 64 (II. 48); and 136 (II. 251, “in fact, our sign,” &c., seventh line from the top of the page 136).
- Dom**, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).
- Don**, a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).
- Dotted line**, when used instead of the dash, 35 (I. 44).
- Double endings**, example of, in verse, 255 (IV. 22).
- Double accent**, explained, 103 (II. 165).
- Doubling of consonants in spelling**, when proper and when improper, 16 (I. 23, 24).
- Doxy**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 147).
- Dr**, usual etymological character of a word beginning with, 50 (II. 15).
- Dramatic poetry**, its external characteristics, 262 (IV. 28).
- Drome**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 151).
- Duce**, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 85 (II. 102).
- Duct**, }
- Dys-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 80 (II. 89).
- E**, as a letter, how pronounced, 6 (I. 19).
- as terminating a word, its common effect; its effect in particular cases, and its different etymological character under different circumstances, 51 (II. 20):—Exercise in the various orthography of its proper sound, MANUAL, 32.
- E-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- Ea**, a digraph, its etymological character, 49 (II. 14).
- Ec-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- Echleipsis**, a term which in English prosody may be substituted by the more general term *synæresis*, 251 (IV. 11).

- Ed, exercise for adding it to the infinitive form of a verb, **MANUAL**, 41 and 48 (I).
- Ee, a digraph, some occasions on which it occurs, 51 (II. 20); and 84 (II. 99).
- Ei, its liability as a digraph to be confounded with *ie* in spelling, 15 (I. 21):—Its various etymological character, 49 (II. 14); and 84 (II. 98).
- Ellipsis, nature and limits of it when it passes under the name grammatical, 213 (III. 102):—When grammatically objectionable as regards an article, 214 (III. 103); as regards a noun substantive, 215 (III. 104); as regards an adjective, *ib.* (III. 105); as regards a pronoun, *ib.* (III. 106); as regards a verb, *ib.* (III. 107); as regards an infinitive or participle, *ib.* (III. 108); as regards an adverb, 216 (III. 109); as regards a preposition, *ib.* (III. 110); as regards a conjunction, *ib.* (III. 111):—Examples of over-scrupulousness in not using ellipsis, *ib.* (III. 112):—Examples of ellipsis grammatically unobjectionable, but wrong in point of rhetoric, 217 (III. 113). Abuse in the application of, in order to explain certain difficulties of construction,—*see* Understood.
- Em-, as in *embattle*, a form of the prefix *en-*, and this the Norman form of *in-*, 68 (II. 63).
- En-, *see* above. *See also In-*:—As a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- Ence, } *see* -Ance, -Ant.  
-Ent, }
- Enclitic, effect of accent so named, 103 (II. 166).
- English, outline history of the language; its remote parent; its two immediate parents; the time when it had received its present name; latinizing innovators on, from the days of Elizabeth, 45-49 (II. 12).
- Ennea-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 85).
- Ennial, a Latin Eng. suffix, 85 (II. 103).
- Enter-, a Norman Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 63).
- Entomo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 94).
- Epi-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- Epic, one of the general terms serving to class poetical compositions, 262 (IV. 28).
- Epode, one of the stanzas of the regular ode, 265 (IV. 32).
- Equi-, a form of two very different Latin Eng. prefixes, 82 (II. 93).
- Et, its signification in *floweret*, &c., 61 (II. 41); in *sulphuret*, and other terms of modern chemistry, 101 (II. 163).
- Etymology, what it treats of as a part of grammar, 37 (II. 1):—Exercises in, **MANUAL**, 31-55.
- Etymological character of English words, indicated by the monosyllabic form, 49 (II. 13); by the vowel digraphs, *ib.* (II. 14); by certain consonants, 50 (II. 15-18); by the vowel terminating the

word, 51 (II. 19-25); by the consonant terminating the word, 54 (II. 26-44); by the significant parts in their composition, namely, their prefixes and suffixes, 62-103 (II. 45-167).

En-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 80 (II. 89).

Ex-, } Latin Eng. prefixes, 72 (II. 74).  
Extra-, }

Exclamative, a sentence so called, shown to be a variation from some strict logical form, 212 (III. 98).

Examination questions adapted to the accidence, MANUAL, 1-18.

Extensible, nouns of things so called as distinguished from nouns of things numerable, 108 (II. 174).

F, its sound, 3 (I. 9):—Exercise in the various orthography of the sound, MANUAL, 40:—Etymological character of words that terminate in the letter, 55 (II. 29).

-Fact, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 85 (II. 104).  
-Faction, }

-Fare, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

-Fect, } forms of fact, faction, which see.  
-Fection, }

-Fend, }  
-Fence, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 86 (II. 105).  
-Fer, }  
-Ferous, }

-Fice, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 85 (II. 104).  
-Ficient, }

-Fid, }  
-Fide, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 86 (II. 105).  
-Fident, }  
-Find, }

-Fine, form of a Latin Eng. and of a Norman Eng. suffix, *ib.* (II. 106).

-Firm, a Latin Eng. suffix, *ib.* (II. 107).

-Fit, a Latin Eng. suffix, 85 (II. 104).

-Flect, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 86 (II. 107).  
-Flection or Flection, }

-Fleet, a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).

-Flict, }  
-Fluent, } Lat. Eng. suffixes, 86 (II. 108).  
-Fluous, }  
-Flux, }

-Foil, a Norman Eng. suffix, *ib.* (II. 109).

-Fold, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69).

-Folk, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).



- Folious, a Latin Eng. suffix, 86 (II. 109).
- For, one of the long-established prepositions, and also of the long-established conjunctions, lii. (No. 6):—No essential difference between the preposition and conjunction, 151 (II. 277).
- as a Saxon Eng. prefix, is sometimes the same word as the preposition, but in many instances is a contraction of *fore*-, 64 (II. 49).
- Fore-, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 64 (II. 50, 51).
- Ford, a suffix in Eng. names of places, 70 (II. 71).
- Fort, a Latin Eng. suffix, 86 (II. 109).
- Found, a Norman Eng. suffix, of various etymology and meaning, 86 (II. 111).
- Fract, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 86 (II. 110).
- Fraction, }
- Fratr-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).
- Fringe, }
- Front, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 86 (II. 110).
- Fuge, }
- Fugal, }
- Ful, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69):—Exercise for adding it in originating formatives, *MANUAL*, 44.
- Fuse, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 86 (II. 111).
- Fusive, }
- Future, a tense in the indicative mood, known by the signs *shall* or *will*, 139 (II. 255); and 141 (II. 258):—The present tense, so named, of the subjunctive, a future in meaning, 145 (II. 265):—Exercises for forming the future, and future-perfect indicative, *MANUAL*, 50.
- Fy, a Latin Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 112).
- G, its sounds, 10 (I. 19—"So likewise *g*," &c., second line from the top of page 10):—Exercises in the various orthography of its sounds, *MANUAL*, 40 and 44:—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 55 (II. 30).
- Gain-, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 65 (II. 52).
- Gamy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 147).
- Ge, *see* Geo-, and -Geum.
- Gen, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 92 (II. 141).
- Gender, defined for young learners, v.:—Tables of nouns that mark difference of, by a difference of termination, xliii.; by a different word, *ib.*; examples of the same difference indicated by prefixed words, xliv.:—Further explained for older learners, 112 (II. 193-202):—Concord of pronoun and noun as regards gender, 168 (III. 19), and 169 (III. 21):—Exercises for forming the feminine noun from the masculine, and returning the feminine into the masculine, *MANUAL*, 35.

-Generate, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 92 (II. 141).  
 -Geny, }

Genitive, the case so named in Latin grammar, vi.:—The genitive in English grammar is otherwise and more commonly called Possessive, 114 (II. 203):—See Possessive.

Geo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 94).

-Gerent, }  
 -Gest, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 87 (II. 113).  
 -Gestion, }

-Geum, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 151).

Gh, etymological character of, as a consonant digraph, 50 (II. 15).

-Glyph, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 152).

-Gnomy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 147); and 97 (II. 152).

-Gnostic, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 97 (II. 152).

-Gon, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, *ib.* ♦

-Gony, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 92 (II. 141); 95 (II. 146); and 97 (II. 152).

Gothic, the language so called, the parent of Saxon, as this was the parent of English, 46 (II. 12).

Government, explained, 163 (III. 3):—Government in the possessive case of one noun by another, 167 (III. 12-14):—Government of a noun in the objective case by an active verb, 168 (III. 16); in the objective case by a preposition, *ib.* (III. 17); and 177 (III. 46):—Government of a verb in the subjunctive mood, 173 (III. 36):—Government of a verb in the infinitive, 174 (III. 37, 38):—Government of a verb in its shape of participle, *ib.* (III. 39, 40):—Apparent government of nouns by interjections, 180 (III. 53):—Government of a noun in the possessive by a logical noun; and of a logical noun in the possessive by another noun, 193 (III. 69):—Exercises in syntactical government, MANUAL, 59; and 77-84.

-Grade, a Latin Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 113).

-Gram, *see* -Graphy.

Gramin-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).

Grammar, what it teaches beginners, iii.:—Defined for the more advanced learner, 1 (Introd. 1):—General divisions of, *ib.* (Introd. 2):—Difference between it, and Logic and Rhetoric, i. (Introd., a fable); and 181 (III. 54-56):—*See* also the answer to the first additional question, MANUAL, 1.

-Graphy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 84 (II. 96, 97); and 94 (II. 145).

Greek, words or parts of words originally from it, generally come to us through Latin, 92 (II. 141).—Prefixes from, Suffixes from, *see* Prefixes, Suffixes.

-Gress, a Latin Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 113).

Gymno-, } Greco-Lat. Eng. prefixes, 83 (II. 95).  
 Gyne-, }

H, its sound, 3 (I. 5):—Exercise in the orthography of its sound,

**MANUAL, 37**:—Is a silent letter in *heir, honest, honour, hostler, hour, humble, humour*, and their derivatives; always after a vowel at the end of words; forms digraphs with certain other consonants, 6 (I. 18); and is liable to be silent in union with *p, c, t, r*, 14 (I. 20. "But an aspirated," &c., fourth line at page 14):—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 56 (II. 31).

—Habit, a Latin Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 114).

—Ham, a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).

Harmony, what it is as regards language, 243 (IV. 1).

Had, its conditional character in certain forms of construction, 144 (II. 262, 263).

Have, conjugated as an auxiliary, xiii.:—The grammatical effect arising from its use as an auxiliary, 135 (II. 251); and 175 (III. 40).

He, in its most general application, a pronoun of the common gender, 113 (II. 196); and 169 (III. 21).

Hecaton-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 86).

—Hedron, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 98 (II. 153).

Helio-, } A Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95); and suffix, 98 (II. 153).  
—Helion, }

—Hemera, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 98 (II. 153).

Hemi-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 81).

Hemistich, a term used in prosody, 263 (IV. 29).

Hemo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

Hence, Thence, Whence, proper meaning of, lii. (end of Table No. 5).

Hendeca-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 86).

Hepta-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 85).

Here, There, Where, their meaning, lii. (end of Table No. 5).

—Here, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 87 (II. 114).  
—Hesion, }

—Herd, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

Hetero-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 90).

Hex-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 77 (II. 85).

Hiero-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).

Hind-, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 65 (II. 51).

Hippo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

History of the English language, outline of, 45 (II. 12).

Hither, Thither, Whither, their meaning and proper use, lii. (end of Table No. 5):—An exercise which includes a trial of their proper use, **MANUAL**, 77.

—Hold, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

Homi-, } distinguished from each other as Greco-Latin, or Latin  
Homo-, } Eng. prefixes, 81 (II. 90).  
Homœo-, }

-Hood, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69, (II. 69).

-Hurst, a suffix in Eng. names of places, 70 (II. 71).

Hyper-, } Greco-Lat. Eng. prefixes, 72 (II. 75):—Their application  
Hypo-, } and meaning in modern chemistry, 101 (II. 163).

Hyphen, proper use of, 32 (I. 38-41).

I, the true character of its alphabetical sound, 5 (I. 17); its other sounds, 6 (I. 19):—Exercises in the orthography of its sounds, MANUAL, 32 and 33:—Infrequent occurrence of, as a terminating letter, and character of the few words which end with it, 53 (II. 21):—Cases in which *i*, and not *y*, is properly used, 18 (I. 25).

—, as a pronoun, declined, vii.; and classed, 109 (II. 177).

Iambus, a constituent foot in one species of English verse, 253 (IV. 16):—Examples of Iambic verse, *ib.* (IV. 15):—Further examples, MANUAL, 145 and 147.

-Ible, *see* Able.

Ic, its distinction from *ous* as an adjective termination in modern chemistry, 101 (II. 163).

Ichno-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

Ichthy-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 94).

Icon-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

-Ide, a significant termination in chemistry, 101 (II. 163).

Idio-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).

Ie, its liability as a digraph to be confounded with *ei* in spelling, 15 (I. 21):—Etymological character of words in which it occurs, 49 (II. 14):—Change of *y* into *ie* in forming a plural, or the third person of a verb, 111 (II. 184).

Igni-, a Lat. Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).

Il-, } forms of the Latin Eng. prefix in-, 102 (II. 164).  
Im-, }

Imperative, the mood so named, exemplified in the verb *do*, xii.; in the verb *be*, xv.; and in the verb *take*, xviii.:—Its formation explained, 140 (II. 256):—An imperative sentence shown to be a variation from some strict logical form, 212 (III. 97).

Imperfect, an epithet applied to the participle in *ing*, ix.; and 124 (II. 234).

In, a separable preposition, 153 (II. 279):—A Latin Eng. prefix, 65 (II. 54):—Its different meaning as a prefix, 67 (II. 61); and 72 (II. 74):—Is liable to take the Norman form, *en*, 21 (I. 30); 65 (II. 54); and 68 (II. 63).

Indefinite, a term applied to certain pronouns, xxv.; and 109 (II. 178):—Also applied to the individual, and one of the dividual forms of the present tense indicative of verbs, x.-xx.; and 138 (II. 252).

Indicative, signs of the mood so named, and forms of the several

tenses in it, xi.-xviii.; and 138 (II. 252-255):—General principle as regards this and other moods, 121 (II. 229).

Individual, *see* Dividual.

Infinitive, a verb in the mood so called, to be esteemed a verb by name only, viii. ("In a dividual verb," &c., at bottom of the page); and 119 (II. 218):—How it enters into construction, xxxi.; and 174 (III. 37, 38):—Etymological explanation of *to*, the ordinary sign of the infinitive, 64 (II. 48); 136 (II. 251; "in fact our sign," &c., seventh line from the top of page 136); *see* also the foot note, page 186:—When the sign *to* is omitted in construction, 174 (III. 37):—Exercise on the syntax of, MANUAL, 81.

Infinitively, an adjective when so taken, xxxii. (3, at the lower part of the page); and 171 (III. 33):—A noun, when so taken, xxix. (3); and 165 (III. 8, last line of the page, "And suppose," &c.)

Inflection, grammatical, little extent of in English, compared with other languages, 103 (II. 168); distinguished from logical inflection, 106 (II. 169):—Inflections of the articles and demonstratives, 117 (II. 213, 214):—Inflections of the voice, 247 (IV. 6).

-Ing, a common Eng. termination, 55 (II. 30):—A suffix in Eng. names of places, 70 (II. 71):—Exercise for adding it to the infinitive form of a verb, MANUAL, 40.

Intellection, an act of, what it is, 211 (III. 95).

Inter-,  
Intra-, } Latin Eng. prefixes, 72 (II. 74).  
Intro-, }

Interjection, explained, and theoretically traced from its early to its present condition as a part of language, xxi. (9); xxxiv.; 37 (II. 2); 43 (II. 11); 156 (II. 285):—Apparent government of nouns by, 180 (III. 53):—Logical interjection, 196 (III. 79).

Interrogative, a sentence so named, shown to be a variation from some strict logical form, 212 (III. 100).

Ir-, a form of the prefix *In*, 102 (II. 164).

Irregular, verbs so deemed indicated for young learners, ix. ("Every verb, except," &c.):—Table of, xlv-l.:—Again explained, 121 (II. 228):—Different degrees of irregularity in verbs, 124 (II. 235-250; *see* also the synopsis at page 274):—Substantives so deemed with respect to the mode of forming their plural, v., and xli. (No. 1); also 111 (II. 183-192):—Adjectives and adverbs so deemed with respect to the formation of their degrees, xxvii., and li. (No. 5); also 118 (II. 215, 216).

-Ise or -Ize, a common termination of certain verbs, 22 (I. 32); also, 52 (II. 20, at the bottom of page 52).

-Ish, a significant termination, as in *whitish*, &c., 56 (II. 31).

-Ism, a common termination, 57 (II. 35).

Iso-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 79 (II. 87).

-Ist, a common termination, 61 (II. 41, at bottom of page 61).

-Ite, a significant termination in chemistry, 101 (II. 163).

-**Ix**, a feminine termination, 62 (II. 43); and 113 (II. 199).

**J**, how sounded, 4 (I. 14); and 5 (I. 17):—Exercise in the various orthography of its sound:—The letter terminates no word in English, 56 (II. 32).

-**Jacent**,  
-**Ject**,  
-**Jection**, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 87 (II. 115).

**Jesu**, a word exemplifying the vocative case, 166 (III. 9).

-**Jure**, a Latin Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 115).

**K**, its sound, 4 (I. 13):—Exercise in the various orthography of its sound, MANUAL, 43:—What words are written with *ck* terminational, 19 (I. 27); and 54 (II. 27):—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 56 (II. 33).

-**Kin**, a termination forming certain diminutives, 58 (II. 36).

-**Kind**, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

**Kn**, its etymological character as a consonant digraph, 50 (II. 15).

**Knöwledge**, its pronunciation accounted for, 103 (II. 167).

**L**, its sound, 3 (I. 11):—When to double or not double it in spelling, 16 (I. 23, 24):—Exercise in the various orthography of its sound, MANUAL, 41:—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 56 (II. 34).

**Lapid-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).

-**Lapse**,  
-**Lateral**, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 87 (II. 116).

**Latin**, way in which words originally flowed, and now flow, from it into English, 48 (II. 12; "Thus far," &c., ninth line from the top of page 12):—Declension of a Latin noun through its cases in the singular number, vi.:—Prefixes from, Suffixes from, *see* Prefixes, Suffixes.

-**Latry**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 147).

-**League**, a Norman Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 117).

-**Lect**,  
-**Lection**,  
-**Legation**, } Latin Eng. suffixes, *ib.*

-**Lege**,  
-**Leigh**,  
-**Ley**, } suffixes of the same meaning in Eng. names of places, 70 (II. 71).

-**Lemma**,  
-**Lepsis**,  
-**Lepsey**, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 95 (II. 147); and 98 (II. 154).

-**Less**, a Saxon termination, of privative meaning, used for forming adjectives, 60 (II. 40); and 69 (II. 69).

Lesser, one of the two forms of the comparative of *little*, li. (in the Table No. 5); and 118 (II. 216).

-Let, its signification in *ringlet*, &c., 61 (II. 41).

Lethi-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

Licence, grammatical, xxxvii.; and 217 (III. 114-118):—Licences in English verse, 253 (IV. 17-27):—The proper spelling of, as a substantive, 21 (I. 31).

-Ligation, a Latin Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 117).

-Like, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69).

-Lineal,

-Linear, } Lat. Eng. suffixes, 87 (II. 118).

-Ling, a characteristic termination in *seedling*, &c., 55 (II. 30).

-Lite,

-Lith, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes of the same meaning, 98 (II. 154).

Lith-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

-Land, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

-Locution, a Latin Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 119); and 93 (II. 142).

Log-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

Logic, difference between it and Grammar and Rhetoric, i. (Introduct., a fable); and 181 (III. 54-56):—See also MANUAL, 1 (answer to the first additional question):—Co-operation of, with Grammar, 184 (III. 57-62); and 241 (III. 145):—Effects of, on the purely grammatical rules of Syntax, 197 (III. 80-94):—Effects further traced with reference to Punctuation, 241 (III. 145):—Exercises discriminating Logic from Grammar, MANUAL, 92.

Logical, meaning of the word, MANUAL, 16 (answer to additional question):—A term applied to parts of speech, whether dividual or individual, that are made up of other parts, xxxiv.-xxxvi.; and 190 (III. 63-79):—Exercises in Syntax which require attention to logical parts of speech, MANUAL, 60-62; 68, 78.

-Logue,

-Logy, } Latin and Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, of the same meaning,

-Loquy, } 93 (II. 142); and 94 (II. 145).

-Low, a suffix in Eng. names of places, 70 (II. 71).

-Lord,

-Lorn, } Saxon Eng. suffixes, 69 and 70 (II. 70).

-Lude,

-Lusion, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 87 (II. 119).

-Ly, a common termination of adjectives and adverbs, 54 (second line from the top).

Lyric, exterior characteristics of verse so called, 262 (IV. 28-32).

-Lysis, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 98 (II. 154).

M, its sound, 3 (I. 11):—Exercise in the various orthography of its sound, MANUAL, 42:—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 57 (II. 35).

- Machy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).
- Macro-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 79 (II. 87).
- Magn-, a Latin Eng. prefix, *ib.*
- Main, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73):—The same word is a prefix in *mainprise*, *maintain*, &c.)
- Male-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 80 (II. 89).
- Mancy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).
- Mand, a Norman Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 120).
- Man, } Saxon Eng. suffixes, 69 (II. 70).
- Mas, }
- Mathy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).
- Matri-, a Lat. Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).
- May, a verb, conjugated, x.:—Its classification as a verb irregular, 129 (II. 244):—A sign of the potential mood, 141 (II. 257).
- Melan-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).
- Melli-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).
- Melody, what it is in speech, 243 (IV. 1):—What sounds in speech have this quality, 244 (IV. 3).
- Member, a Norman Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 120).
- Mend, a Latin Eng. suffix, 87 (II. 120).
- Ment, a Norman termination, common to certain nouns, 61 (II. 41); see also 58 (II. 36).
- Merce, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 121): it must be distinguished from the termination in *im-merge*, (the same as to *immerge*), which is from the Latin verb *mergo*.
- Mes-, a Norman Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 67).
- Metry, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 82 (II. 94); and 96 (II. 147).
- Micro-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 79 (II. 87).
- Might, see May.
- Mille-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 86).
- Mire, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 121).
- Mis-, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 65 (II. 53).
- Mise, } Latin Eng. suffixes of the same root, 88 (II. 122).
- Mission, }
- Mit, }
- Mn, initial letters that indicate Greco-Latin origin, 50 (II. 17).
- Modulation, explained and illustrated, 243 (IV. 1); and 246 (IV. 5, 6).
- Monger, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 72).
- Mongrel, certain parts of speech so named, xxviii.
- Monish, a Norman Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 122).
- Mono-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 81).
- Monstrate, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 123).



Mood, explained for young learners, x.; further explained, 121 (II. 229):—Exercises for forming the moods and their tenses, *MANUAL*, 47–51.

More, its grammatical character when followed by *than*, 177 (III. 45); when preceded by the definite article, and followed by *the better*, 214 (III. 103, including the foot-note).

–Morphosis, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 98 (III. 154).

–Most, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69).

Mot, } obsolete verbs, from which the verb *must* is derived, 129 (II. 244).  
Mow, }

–Mote, a Saxon or a Latin Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70); and 88 (II. 123).

–Mount, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).

Multi-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 79 (II. 87).

Multitude, nouns of, those which are properly so called, discriminated, and their proper concord with verbs explained, 205 (III. 88):—Exercises on, *MANUAL*, 62–64.

–Mure, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 123).

Must, an auxiliary verb, conjugated, xii.:—Its original and its present state as a grammatical element, 129 (II. 244); and 137 (III. 251).

–Mute, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 88 (II. 123).  
–Mutation, }

Mytho-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

N, its sound, 3 (I. 11):—Exercise in the various orthography of its sound, *MANUAL*, 42:—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 57 (II. 36).

Names of places, the meaning of some of the common suffixes that help to form them, 70 (II. 71).

–Nect, –nection, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 88 (II. 124).  
–Nex, –nexion, }

Negative, a sentence so named shown to be logically so only when opposed to an affirmation, being otherwise a mere rhetorical variation from some strict logical affirmative form, 213 (III. 101).

Neo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).

–Ness, a Saxon termination, used in forming abstract nouns, 60 (II. 40):—Exercise for adding it in originating formatives, *MANUAL*, 43.

Neuro-, } a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix and suffix, 98 (II. 155).  
–Neurosis, }

Neuter, its meaning when applied to nouns, v. (*Gender*); and 112 (II. 193):—Its meaning when applied to verbs, ix.; and 120 (II. 222):—Certain neuter verbs that almost indifferently take an active or a passive form, 120 (II. 223); and 148 (II. 269):—Neuter verb infinitive joined in construction with a noun in the nominative case,

and taken infinitively with it, 165 (III. 8); joined in a similar manner with an adjective, 171 (III. 33).

**Ng**, a digraph, 6 (I. 18):—Its sound, 4 (I. 12):—Exercise in the various orthography of its sound, **MANUAL**, 42.

**No**, an adjective when it makes sense with a substantive; the true ground on which, on other occasions, it is an adverb, 149 (II. 271).

**Nominative**, the case so called, vi.; and 114 (II. 203):—In how many ways a nominative enters grammatically into construction, xxix.; and 164 (III. 4-11):—Nominatives grammatically singular, but logically plural, and the reverse, 198 (III. 82-89):—Logical Nominative, 193 (III. 67):—Nominatives of different persons disjunctively connected, 201 (III. 85): Exercises on these subjects, **MANUAL**, 60-70.

**Nomo-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

**-Nomy**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 95 (II. 146).

**Nona-**, a Lat. Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 85).

**Notes**, at foot of pages i., x., xi., xiii., xiv., xvi., xvii., xix., xxiii., xl., xliii., li., 48, 49, 64, 107, 113, 115, 121, 175, 179, 186, 194, 214, 231, 239, 262:—**MANUAL**, 1, 2, 5, 13, 17, 18, 19, 21, 22, 26, 27, 29, 35, 39, 43, 45, 51, 69, 73, 74, 80, 91, 92, 93, 95, 101, 102, 103, 110, 111, 113, 117:—Note preliminary to syntactical parsing, **MANUAL**, 55:—Note in continuation of instructions for parsing on the true principles of language, **MANUAL**, 108.

**Norman**, influence of, in the early formation of English, 47 (II. 12):—Prefixes from, 68 (II. 63-68):—Suffixes from, 71 (II. 73).

**-Normous**, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 124).

**Noun**, explained for young learners in its varieties of proper, common, and abstract, iii.:—Its true grammatical character, 38 (II. 4):—Further explained, 107 (II. 170-176):—Logical noun distinguished from a mere grammatical noun, 185 (III. 60):—Logical noun individual distinguished from logical noun dividual, 192 (III. 65-70):—Noun of multitude, *see* Multitude.

**Number**, as it respects nouns and pronouns, v.; also xli. (No. 1); and 110 (II. 181-192):—As it respects verbs, 122 (II. 231, 232).

**Numbers**, poetic, 248 (IV. 8-10).

**Numisma-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

**O**, its sounds, 6 (I. 19):—Exercises in the various orthography of its sounds, **MANUAL**, 32, 33:—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 53 (II. 22):—How nouns so terminating are made plural, xli.; and 111 (II. 183).

**O and Oh**, apparent government of nouns by, 180 (III. 53).

**Oa**, as a vowel digraph, its ordinary sound, 6 (I. 18):—Its etymological character, 49 (II. 14).

**Ob-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).

**Objective**, the case so named, vi.; and 114 (II. 203):—The ways in which nouns in this case enter into construction, xxx.; and 168

- (III. 16-18):—Exercises in Syntax with regard to the case, MANUAL, 79, 80.
- Oblique, cases of nouns so called in contradistinction to the *right* or nominative case, 114 (II. 203).
- Ock, a termination forming certain diminutives, 56 (II. 33).
- Octo-, a Greco-Lat. and Latin Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 85).
- Ode, its strict or Pindaric form, 265 (IV. 32).
- Ode, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 98 (II. 155).
- Ody, }
- Oe, a genuine Eng. digraph, 53 (II. 22), to be distinguished from *æ*, a Latin digraph, 50 (II. 14).
- Oid, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 98 (II. 156).
- Oidal, }
- Olig-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 79 (II. 87).
- Omni-, a Latin Eng. prefix, *ib*.
- On, as a separable preposition, 153 (II. 279):—As a prefix in Saxon Eng., 65 (II. 55).
- Onto-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).
- Onymy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).
- Optative, a sentence so called, shown to be a variation from some strict logical form, 212 (III. 99).
- Optrics, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 98 (II. 156).
- Oo, proper sound of, as a digraph, 6 (II. 18, "In *moot*, *boot*, &c.," middle of the page); also page 7 (II. 19; "Of these stopped sounds," &c.):—Exercises in the orthography of its sounds, MANUAL, 34:—Its etymological character, 49 (II. 14).
- Or, as a conjunction, 153 (II. 280); and 200 (III. 85):—As a termination, 20 (I. 29); also, 51 (II. 20); also, 59 (II. 39); and 62 (II. 43):—Exercises on the various effect of *or*, in contrast with *and*, MANUAL, 54 (1), and 64, "Join," &c.
- Orama, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 98 (II. 156).
- Ornitho-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 94).
- Ortho-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 80 (II. 90).
- Orthoepy, distinguished as to the meaning of the word, and as to the practice of the language, from Orthography, 5 (I. 16-20).
- Orthography, what it treats of as a part of grammar, 2 (I. 1):—Distinguished from Orthoepy, 5 (I. 16-20):—Exercises in, MANUAL, 31-44:—For further references, *see* Spelling.
- Ought, its single inflection, xii.:—Why it has not taken a place among the auxiliary verbs, xxxi. (1):—Has only a present tense in modern English, xii.; and 129 (II. 244).
- Ou, } proper sound of, as vowel digraphs, 6 ("In *loud*, *now*, &c.," middle of the page):—Their etymological character, 49
- Ow, } (II. 14).

-Out-, } Saxon Eng. prefixes, 65 (II. 56); and suffixes, 69 (II. 70);  
 -Over-, } also 70 (71).

Oxy-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).

P, its sound, 4 (I. 13):—Exercise in the orthography of its sound, MANUAL, 43:—Etymological character of words that terminate in it, 58 (II. 37).

-Pair, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73); and 88 (II. 125).

Palin-, }  
 Pan-, } Greco-Lat. Eng. prefixes, 79 (II. 87).  
 Pant-, }

Para-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).

Paragoge, one of the licences of verse, 250 (IV. 10).

Paragraph, mark for in old compositions, 35, 36 (I. 46, 50):—Doctrine of, and of similar divisions in writing, 242 (III. 146).

-Pare, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 125).

Parenthesis, the marks of, belong sometimes to grammatical, sometimes to rhetorical punctuation, 34 (I. 44):—Examples of, 236 (III. 137):—Exercises for properly inserting, MANUAL, 137.

Parsing, examples of, for young learners, xxxix., xl.:—Doctrine of, when sentences are not immediately resolvable into single words, 184 (III. 57-62):—Exercises in Etymological Parsing, MANUAL, 18:—In Syntactical Parsing, MANUAL, 55:—On the true Principles of Language, MANUAL, 101.

Participles, explained for young learners, ix.:—Table of irregular, xlv.:—Further explained, 123 (II. 233, 234):—How they enter into construction, xxxi., xxxii.; and 174 (III. 39-43):—With what difference of context the same word, when an adjective, and when a participle, enters into construction, 159 (II. 288):—Exercises for forming the participles from the infinitive, MANUAL, 40-42, and 48.

Participial, conjugations so named, 148 (II. 269).

Parts of Speech, the two original, iii.; and 38 (II. 3, 4):—Those derived from, and subservient to the noun and the verb, xx.; and 39 (II. 5-11):—Are really no more than six in number, MANUAL, 10 (the answers to additional questions):—Mutual conversion of, 157 (II. 286-292):—For further references, see Logical.

Passive, meaning of, when said of a verb, ix.; and 120 (II. 221):—The manner of conjugating a verb passive, xiv. ("To be is deemed," &c.):—Neuter verbs having a passive form, 148 (II. 269).

Patho-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

-Pathy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).

Patr-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).

Pauses, rhetorical, distinguished from grammatical, 238 (III. 141):—Cesural in verse, 259 (IV. 26, 27):—See also Punctuation

- Ped, }  
 -Pede, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 88 (II. 125).  
 -Pel, }
- Penta-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 77 (II. 85).
- Pente-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 86).
- Pepsey, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 96 (II. 147); and 98 (II. 157).  
 -Peptic, }
- Per-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74):—Its meaning as part of a chemical term, 101 (II. 163).
- Perfect, an epithet applied to the second participle, or that which usually ends in *d*, *t*, or *n*, ix.; and 124 (II. 234):—Exercises for forming the participle so called, MANUAL, 41 and 48.
- Peri-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).
- Period, when a sentence is, and when it is not, properly so called, 222 (III. 121):—Examples of sentences grammatically separable into two or more periods, but rhetorically blended, so as, in each case, to be one, 231 (III. 126); and 237 (III. 139, 140):—Analysis of periods of more or less complicated construction, MANUAL, 108–115.
- Person, meaning of, as a grammatical term, applied to nouns and pronouns, iv.; and 110 (II. 179, 180):—Applied to verbs, 122 (II. 231, 232):—A sentence of the first or of the second person, shown to be a variation from some strict logical form of the third person, 211 (III. 96).
- Personal pronouns, declined, vii.:—Personal pronouns possessive distinguished from adjective pronouns possessive, xxii.; and 115 (II. 206).
- Petal, a Latin Eng. suffix, to be distinguished from the word which signifies a flower leaf, 98 (II. 157).
- Ph, a consonant digraph, indicating Greek derivation, 50 (II. 17).
- Phagous, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes from the same root, 92 (II. 140); 96 (II. 147); and 98 (II. 157).  
 -Phagy, }
- Phant-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).
- Phasia, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 158).
- Phery, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).
- Philo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).
- Phlebo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 94).
- Phony, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).
- Phrases, often reconcilable to grammar only by deeming them ultimate or individual elements of the sentence, 195 (III. 76–79).
- Phrasis, }  
 -Phrase, }  
 -Phrastic, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 99 (II. 158).  
 -Phthong, }  
 -Phyllous, }  
 -Physis, }  
 -Phyte, }

**Physio-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

**-Placent**, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 125).

**-Plasm**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 159).

**Pleni-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 92).

**-Plex**, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 126); and 93 (II. 143).

**-Plice**, a Norman Eng. suffix, 93 (II. 143).

**-Ploce**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, *ib.*

**-Plore**, a Norman Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 126).

**Plural**, meaning of, as a grammatical term applied to nouns and pronouns, v.; and 110 (II. 181); applied to verbs, 122 (II. 231):—  
Peculiar forms of the plural in nouns, xli.; and 110 (II. 182-192):  
—Meaning not itself several, which embraces the knowledge of things distinct and several, MANUAL, 111 (foot-note):—Exercises for putting nouns and pronouns into the plural, MANUAL, 31.

**Pn**, initial letters that indicate Greco-Lat. origin, 50 (II. 17).

**-Pncea**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 159).

**Poems**, what are the chief kinds of, 262 (IV. 28).

**Points**, *see* Punctuation.

**-Poise**, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).

**Poly-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 79 (II. 87).

**-Poly**, a suffix of various origin and meaning, 96 (II. 147).

**-Pone**,

**-Pose**, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 89 (II. 126).

**-Position**,

**-Port**, a Latin Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 127).

**Possessive**, meaning of, as a grammatical term, and manner of formation from the nominative, vi.-viii.; and 114 (II. 203-206):—Government of one noun by another in the case so called, 167 (III. 12-14):—The same construction when one of the two nouns is a logical noun, 193 (III. 69):—Exercises for putting nouns into the possessive case, MANUAL, 33, 34:—On proper syntax with regard to this case, MANUAL, 77, 78:—*See also* Genitive. Possessive Pronouns, *see* Pronouns.

**Post-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 65 (II. 51); and 72 (II. 74).

**Potential**, signs of the mood so named, and forms of the several tenses in it, x.-xix.; and 141 (II. 257-263):—General principle as regards this and other moods, 121 (II. 229):—Exercise on certain tenses of the potential mood, MANUAL, 51.

**-Pound**, a Norman and a Saxon Eng. suffix of different meaning, 89 (II. 126).

**Præ-**, *see* Pre-.

**Pre-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).

**Prefixes**, Saxon, 63 (II. 46-62):—Norman, 68 (II. 63-68):—The more common of the Latin and Greco-Latin, 72 (II. 74-76):—Latin and Greco-Latin that express quantity and its divisions, 76

- (II. 81-88):—That express quality, 80 (II. 89-92):—Some of those derived from miscellaneous nouns, 82 (II. 93-95):—Changes of form to which Greek and Latin prefixes are liable, 102 (II. 164); also, 73 (II. 77).
- Prehend, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 89 (II. 127).  
 -Prehension, }
- Prepositions, explained for young learners, **xxi.** (7); and **xxviii.**:—Are often of a mongrel character, or used adverbially, **xxviii.** (bottom of the page):—Lists of long-established, and of such as having more recently become prepositions, are less generally acknowledged, **lii.**:—How prepositions enter into construction, **xxxiv.**; and **MANUAL**, 110:—Etymological development of, 42 (II. 9); and 151, 152 (II. 275-278):—Definition of, 151 (II. 276):—The use of, is to form with the objective, either a logical adverb, or a logical adjective, **MANUAL**, 110:—Some instances of propriety and impropriety in the use of, 153 (II. 279):—The place of, generally, but not always, before the noun governed, 168 (III. 17):—Government of nouns by, 177 (III. 46, 47):—Logical preposition individual, 195 (III. 74):—Exercises for inserting proper prepositions, **MANUAL**, 52-54:—Exercises on government by, **MANUAL**, 79, 80.
- Present, the tense so named, its formation in the indicative mood, 138 (II. 252, 253):—In the potential mood, 141 (II. 257); and 143 (II. 261).
- Present-future, a tense of the subjunctive mood, 145 (II. 265, 266).
- Press, a Latin Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 127).
- Preter-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- Preterimperfect, Preterperfect, Preterpluperfect, explained as terms, 139 (II. 254):—Exercises for forming, **MANUAL**, 49.
- Preterit, term applied to the form of a verb which denotes past time, **ix.**; and 138 (II. 254):—Irregular preterits, **xliv.**-1.; and 124 (II. 235-250):—Exercises for forming it from the infinitive, **MANUAL**, 47.
- Preterit-present, a tense of the subjunctive mood, 147 (II. 267).
- Prim-, } Latin Eng. prefixes, 76 (II. 81).  
 Primum-, }
- Prise, a Norman Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 127).
- Pro-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).
- Promiscuous Exercises in Syntax, **MANUAL**, 96, 101.
- Pronunciation, first elements of, 2 (I. 2-14):—How far at variance with spelling, 4 (I. 15-20):—Law of, by which the first syllable of *nothing*, *breakfast*, *knowledge*, &c., is shortened, 103 (II. 167):—See also Accent; and pages 243-266, comprising Part IV. of the Principles:—Exercises in Pronunciation are furnished by the Exercises in Orthography, **MANUAL**, 31-44, and interpreted by the correspondent parts of the KEY.
- Pronouns, explained for young learners, **iv.**:—The personal pronouns declined, **vii.**:—The *personal* pronouns possessive distinguished from the *adjective* pronouns possessive, **xxii.**, **xxiii.**; and 115 (II.

206):—Relative pronouns, xxiii.:—Relative pronouns used interrogatively, and demonstratively, *ib.*:—Relative pronouns shown to be conjunctions as much as pronouns, *ib.*:—How to distinguish *that*, when used as a demonstrative, when used as a relative and conjunction, and when used simply as a conjunction, xxiv.:—Relative pronouns indefinite, *ib.*; used adjectively, *ib.*; used interrogatively, *ib.*:—Distributive pronouns, xxv.:—Indefinite pronouns, *ib.*; indefinite pronouns reciprocal, *ib.*:—The several kinds of pronouns recapitulated, *ib.*:—Lists of, No. 4, page 1.:—Etymological development of pronouns, 40 (II. 6):—Pronouns defined, 107 (II. 170); and 109 (II. 177):—Principle of practical distribution into kinds, 109 (II. 178):—Concord of pronouns with their correlative nouns, 168 (III. 19); when the correlatives are not all of the third person, 169 (III. 20); when the correlative is of the common gender, 169 (III. 21); when the correlative is a rational being, and when a brute creature, or a thing neuter, 169 (III. 23):—The relatives *which* and *whose* liable to be used adjectively, 170 (III. 24):—Logical pronouns individual, 194 (III. 72):—Precedence of the first person over the second, and the second over the third, when pronouns are joined in construction, 201 (III. 85):—Exercises for properly using them, MANUAL, 70-74.

Proper, a term applied to nouns or names, iii.; and 107 (II. 172).

Prosody, object of, explained, 243 (IV. 1, 2):—Exercises in, MANUAL, 147-150.

Proto-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 81); and 101 (II. 163).

Ps, initial letters that indicate Greco-Latin origin, 50 (II. 17).

Pseudo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 81 (II. 91).

-Pter, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 99 (II. 159).  
-Pteral, }  
-Ptote, }

-Pugn, a Norman Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 127).

-Pulse, a Latin Eng. suffix, 88 (II. 125).

Punctuation, the several points used in, 34 (I. 43-45):—Principles of, investigated, 220 (III. 119-127):—The principles applied under the general divisions of Grammatical and Rhetorical punctuation—to the ordinary uses of the full stop and comma, 232 (III. 128), 233 (III. 130), and 237 (III. 138, 139);—to the comma distinguishing parts of speech in series, 233 (III. 129);—to the comma distinguishing one intended sense from another, 233 (III. 131), and 237 (III. 139);—to the relative uses of the full stop, colon, semicolon, and comma, 233 (III. 132-134), and 238 (III. 140);—to the pointing-off of intervening clauses, and adverbial or conjunctive clauses, 235 (III. 135);—to the comma indicating grammatical ellipsis, 236 (III. 136);—to the use of parentheses, 236 (III. 137);—to the use of the interrogation point, 239 (III. 142);—to the use of the exclamation point, 240 (III. 143);—to the use of the dash, 241 (III. 144):—Grammatical points not always indicative of the best rhetorical pauses, 238 (III. 141):—Concluding views of the whole subject, 241 (III. 145, 146):—Exercises for improvement in, MANUAL, 124-145.



- Pur-, a Norman Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 65).  
 -Pute, a Latin Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 127).  
 Pyro-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 94).  
 Pyrrhic, the foot in verse so called, 254 (IV. 18).  
 Q, how in general pronounced in union with its inseparable attendant *u*, 5 (I. 15):—how accompanied when its sound is final in a word, 58 (II. 38).  
 Quantitative, the rhythm which may be so called, distinguished from syllabic rhythm, 248 (IV. 8).  
 Quantity, marks of long and short, 35 (I. 46):—What its state or conditions in the English language, 249 (IV. 9):—Application of the marks of quantity with a new meaning, 252 (IV. 14).  
 Quadr-, } Latin Eng. prefixes, 77 (II. 84).  
 Quater-, }  
 Quatr-, }  
 -Quest, a Latin Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 128).  
 Quinque-, } Latin Eng. prefixes, 77 (II. 85).  
 Quin-, }  
 -Quire, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 89 (II. 128).  
 -Quisition, }  
 Quoth, an old verb, 129 (II. 244).  
 R, its sounds, 3 (I. 11), and 8 (I. 19; "An exceptive principle," &c., line 7 from the top of page 8):—Exercises in the various orthography of its sounds, MANUAL, 35-37, and 42:—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 59 (II. 39).  
 Re, its etymological character in the terminations, *bre, cre, gre, tre*, 53 (fourth line from the top).  
 Re-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74); and 79 (II. 87).  
 Reciprocal, the compound personal pronouns so called, xxiii.; and 110 (II. 178).  
 Rect-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 80 (II. 90).  
 -Rect, a Latin Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 129).  
 Regular, in what sense applied to the pluralizing of nouns, 110 (II. 181):—In what sense, to the feminizing of nouns masculine, 113 (II. 197):—In what sense, to the formation of adjectives into the degrees of comparison, 118 (II. 215):—In what sense to verbs, 121 (II. 228).  
 Relation, a general name for that which suggests intellection, 210 (III. 95):—All words whatever are signs of understood relations, 107 (foot-note).  
 Relative, epithet of certain pronouns which are conjunctions as well as pronouns; see Pronouns:—How to detach a relative sentence from the sentence of which it is a part, 169 (III. 22).  
 Retro-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).  
 Rh, a consonant digraph indicating Greek derivation, 50 (II. 17).  
 Rhage, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 159).

Rhetoric, difference between it, and Grammar and Logic, i. (Introd. a fable), and 181 (III. 54-56):—See also **MANUAL**, 1 (Ans. to the first additional quest.) Interference of, with Logic and Grammar, 210 (III. 95):—Influence of, in varying the forms of sentences, 211 (III. 96-101):—As being the cause of grammatical ellipsis, to be guarded against when the clearness of grammatical construction is endangered, 213 (III. 102-113):—Effects of, further traced with reference to Punctuation, 239 (III. 142-146):—Anomalies of Logic and Grammar occasionally justified by it, 217 (III. 114-118):—Exercise discriminating Rhetoric from Grammar, **MANUAL**, 94.

-Ræa, }  
-Rhoids, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 99 (II. 159).

Rhythm, its nature explained, 248 (IV. 8).

-Rick, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

-Ride, a Latin Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 129).

Right, term applied to the nominative case of nouns in contradistinction to *oblique*, 114 (II. 203).

-Rol, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).

-Rupt, a Latin Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 129).

S, its proper sound, 3 (I. 7):—Exercise in the various orthography of its proper sound, **MANUAL**, 38:—Its other sounds, 10 (I. 19, "Thus s, c, t," &c., to the bottom of the page, namely, page 10):—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 60 (II. 40).

Saxon, shown to be the parent of the English language, and still the essential part of it, 46 (II. 12: "The Gothic, the parent," &c., ninth line from the top of page 46):—Saxon-English and Latin-English contrasted, 48 (foot-note):—Saxon prefixes, 63 (II. 46-62):—Saxon suffixes, 69 (II. 69-72).

Scanning, examples of, 254 (IV. 18), and 260 (IV. 26):—Exercises in, **MANUAL**, 147-150.

-Scend, a Latin Eng. suffix, 89 (II. 130).

Scene, difference in the meaning of, when applied by ancient and by modern dramatic poets, and how an Act was determined, 262 (foot-note).

-Scii, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 150).

-Scious, }  
-Science, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 89 (II. 130).

-Scope, }  
-Scopy, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 96 (II. 147), and 99 (II. 160).

-Scribe, }  
-Script, } Lat. Eng. suffixes, 89 (II. 130).

Se-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).

-Sea, a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).

Second person, its common use in the plural when the person referred to is singular, 123 (II. 231, "and it is probable," &c., eleventh line from the top of the page, 123).

- Sect, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 89 (II. 130).
- Section, }
- Sema-, Semat-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 94).
- Semi-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 81).
- Sentences; distinction between what grammar and what logic requires for the correctness of sentences, 162 (III. 1), and 182 (III. 55, 56):  
—Strict logical form of a sentence, and variations from it through the interference of rhetoric, 210 (III. 95-101):—Construction of, further investigated, 220 (III. 119-127).
- Sept-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 85, 86).
- Sequent, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 89 (II. 130).
- Sequence, }
- Sert, } Latin and Norman Eng. suffixes from various roots, 89
- Sertation, } (II. 131).
- Serve, }
- Sesqui-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 78 (II. 87).
- Sex-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 77 (II. 85). It will be seen to be altogether distinct from the suffix in *Sussex*, *Essex*, &c.; which words originally mean *South Saxons*, *East Saxons*, &c.
- Sh, a digraph proper to one of the simple consonant sounds, 6 (I. 18), and 3 (I. 8):—Exercise in the various orthography of the sound, namely, that heard in *SHE*, *MANUAL*, 38:—Etymological character of words in which the digraph occurs, 50 (II. 15).
- Shall, a verb, conjugated, xi.:—Its classification as a verb irregular, 129 (II. 244):—Is a sign sometimes of the indicative, sometimes of the potential mood, 141 (II. 257).
- Shall and Will, the proper use of, discriminated, 139 (II. 255), and 141 (II. 258).
- Ship, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69).
- Should, a verb, conjugated, see *Shall*:—its modern indication of tense or time, 129 (II. 244); 141 (II. 258); and 143 (II. 261).
- Should and Would, the proper use of, discriminated, 143 (II. 261); and 144 (II. 263).
- Side, a Latin Eng. suffix, of different origin and meaning, 90 (II. 132).
- Sign, a Norman Eng. suffix, *ib*.
- Sinistr-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 92).
- Sion, a common termination of words derived from Latin and Norman nouns substantive, 58 (II. 36).
- Sist, a Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 132).
- Slides of the voice; see *Modulation*, or *Inflection*.
- Soli-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 83).
- Solve, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 90 (II. 133).
- Solution, }
- Some, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69).

- Sonant, Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 133).
- Sonnet, exterior characteristics of the, 265 (IV. 31).
- Sophy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).
- Sorori-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).
- Spast, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 160).
- Spect, a Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 133).
- Spelling, how far at variance with Pronunciation, 5 (I. 16-20):—
  - Remark on the diagraphs *ei* and *ie* when liable to be confounded in spelling the sound *ē*, 15 (I. 21):—General principle in doubtful cases, 15 (I. 22):—When a consonant should or should not be doubled, 16 (I. 23, 24):—When *y* should be changed into *i*, 18 (I. 25):—When superfluous letters are to be rejected, 18 (I. 26):—When *k* is to be omitted after *c*, 19 (I. 27):—When to spell the termination of certain words *our*, and when *or*; also when *ar*, or *er*, 19 (I. 28, 29):—When to write, as a termination, *ant* or *ent*, *ance* or *ence*; and when, as an initial syllable, *en* or *in*, 21 (I. 30):—When, in terminating certain words, we should use *ce*, and when *se*, 21 (I. 31):—When to write the termination of certain verbs *ise*, and when *ize*, 22 (I. 32):—When to end certain nouns with *ction*, and when with *xion*, 22 (I. 33):—When a word individually is of doubtful spelling, which of two or more modes may, in numerous given instances, be preferred, 23-30 (I. 34):—Exercises in, *MANUAL*, 31-44.
- Spenserian, example of the stanza so named, 264 (IV. 30).
- Sperse, a Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 133).
- Sphere, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 160).
- Spire, a Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 133).
- Spond, a Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 134).
- Spondee, an incidental foot in iambic verse, 254 (IV. 18).
- Stasis, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 93 (II. 144).
- Stasy, a Norman Eng. suffix, *ib*.
- Stant, a Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 134).
- Stanza, different forms of, in English verse, 263 (IV. 30).
- Statics, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 93 (II. 144).
- Step-, its meaning as a Saxon Eng. prefix, 67 (II. 62).
- Ster, as in *spinster*, an old English termination, 59 (II. 39, "Moreover, there is," &c.)
- Stice, a Latin Eng. suffix, 93 (II. 144).
- Stich, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 160).
- Stil, a Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 134).
- Stinct, a Lat. Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 134).
- Stinguish, a Norman Eng. suffix, *ib*.
- Stitute, a Latin Eng. suffix, 90 (II. 134); and 93 (II. 144).
- Stoke, } Suffixes in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).
- Stow, }

Stops, *see* Punctuation.

-Strain, a Norman Eng. suffix, 91 (II. 135).

-Strict, }  
-Stringe, } Latin Eng. suffixes, *ib.*

Strophe, one of the three recurring stanzas of the regular ode, 265 (IV. 32):—A Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 160).

-Struct, a Latin Eng. suffix, 91 (II. 135).

-Style, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 99 (II. 160).

Sub-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74):—Its meaning in chemistry, 101 (II. 163, toward the bottom of page 101, extending to the next page).

Subjunctive, form of the mood so called exemplified in the auxiliary verb "do," xiii.; in the verb "To be," xvi.; and in the verb "To take," xix.:—Doctrine of this mood, and its proper practical extent, 145 (II. 264-267):—Rules of Syntax appertaining to it, 173 (III. 36):—Syntactical exercises upon, *MANUAL*, 82-84.

Substances, names of, in distinction to names of relations wrongly assumed, except for a partial purpose, 107 (foot-note).

Substantive, epithet of a noun in contradistinction to noun-adjective xx. (4.):—Formative substantives in *ar*, *er*, *or*, *ster*, *ant*, *ent*, *ist*, *ard* compared, 161 (II. 292).—*See also* Noun.

Subter-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).

Suc-, }  
Suf-, } Forms of the prefix Sub, 102 (II. 164).

Suffixes, Saxon, 69 (II. 69, 70, 71, 72):—Norman, 71 (II. 73):—Changes of form to which Greek and Latin suffixes are liable, 83 (II. 96, 97):—Suffixes in Latin Eng. words, 84 (II. 98-140):—Affinity of Latin Eng. suffixes, and Greco-Lat. English, 92 (II. 141-144):—Suffixes in Greco-Lat. English continued and concluded, 94 (II. 145-162).

Sug-, a form of the prefix Sub, 102 (II. 164).

-Sult, }  
-Sume, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 91 (II. 135).  
-Sumption, }

Super-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74):—Its meaning in chemistry, 101 (II. 163, toward the bottom of the page 101).

Superlative, *see* Degrees of Comparison.

Sur-, a Norman Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 66):—Also a form of the Latin prefix Sub, 102 (II. 164).

Syl-, a form of the prefix Syn, 102 (II. 164).

Syllable, what it is to the ear, 30 (I. 35-37):—How syllables are to be divided to the eye, 32 (I. 38-41):—Considered as long and short, 249 (IV. 9); as the source of numbers or rhythm in English verse, not by the variety of long or short, but of full and slack, 252 (IV. 14-16).

Sym-, a form of the prefix Syn, 102 (II. 164).

**Syn-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 75).

**Synæresis**, meaning and extent of the term in English prosody, 251 (IV. 11).

**Synalæpha**, } *see* **Synæresis**,  
**Syncope**, }

**Synepy**, an effect of a proper pronunciation, 243 (IV. 1); and 245 (IV. 4).

**Synopsis**, the whole of the Principles exhibited,—for self or other examination, 267–280.

**Syntax**, explained for young learners, xxix. :—Explained in the unusual sense of forming new words out of significant syllables, 102 (II. 164) :—Explained as the third part of grammar, 162 (III. 1) :—Exercises in **MANUAL**, 58–101 :—Such exercises distinguished from what are properly *logical* (**MANUAL**, 92), and properly *rhetorical*, **MANUAL**, 94.

**Sys-**, a form of the prefix **Syn**, 102 (II. 164).

**Systole**, meaning of, as a term in Prosody, 255 (IV. 20).

**T**, its sound, 4 (I. 13) :—Exercise in the orthography of its sound, **MANUAL**, 44 :—Etymological character of words terminating in it, 61 (II. 41).

**-Tact**, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 84 (II. 97); and 91 (II. 137).  
**-Tangent**, }

**-Tain**, a Norman Eng. suffix, 91 (II. 136).

**-Taph**, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 99 (II. 161).  
**-Taur**, }

**Tauto-**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 80 (II. 89).

**Tax-**, } Greco-Lat. Eng. prefixes, 83 (II. 95).  
**Techn-**, }

**-Techny**, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).

**-Teen**, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69).

**Tele-**, } Greco-Lat. Eng. prefixes of distinct meaning, 81 (II. 91).  
**Teleo-**, }

**-Temper**, a Latin Eng. suffix, 91 (II. 137).

**-Tend**, }  
**-Tension**, } Latin Eng. suffixes requiring discrimination in their  
**-Tent**, } use, 91 (II. 136).  
**-Tention**, }

**Tense**, exemplified for young learners, ix.–xix. :—Further explained, 122 (II. 230) :—Formation of the preterit in regular and irregular verbs, 124 (II. 235–250) :—Formation of all the tenses, 138 (II. 252–269) :—The *present-future* and *preterit-present* of the subjunctive explained, 145 (II. 265); and 147 (II. 267) :—Tenses, how joined in construction, 171 (III. 34, 35) :—Exercises for forming the tenses, **MANUAL**, 47–51.

**Terr-**, a Latin Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 93).

- Tetra-, a Greco-Lat. English prefix, 77 (II. 84).
- Test, a Latin Eng. suffix, 91 (II. 137).
- Th, a consonant digraph having two modes of pronunciation, 3 (I. 10):—Exercises in the orthography of its sounds, *MANUAL*, 41:—Etymological character of the words in which it occurs, 50 (II. 18).
- Than, is sometimes a preposition, lii. (No. 6):—Its syntax as a conjunction, 179 (III. 51).
- That, its application to various purposes, with a full sound only when it is a demonstrative, xxiii., xxiv.; 109 (II. 178); also 117 (II. 211); and 154 (II. 282):—Inflection of, as a demonstrative, 117 (II. 213):—Concord of, with its substantive, 170 (III. 26):—Construction of certain sentences examined, which begin with it as a conjunction, 206 (III. 89, "That warm climates," &c., fourth line from the bottom of the page, 206).
- The, its classification, xx. (5):—Distinguished from *an*, 117 (II. 214).
- Them, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 100 (II. 161).
- Theo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).
- Theon, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 99 (II. 161).
- Theism, }
- There, Thither, the difference between, lii. (end of Table No. 5).
- Thesis, }
- Thet, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, *ib.*
- Thetic, }
- This, a demonstrative correspondent to *that*, which see.
- Thither, There, the difference between, Accidence, lii. (at the end of Table No. 5):—An exercise which includes this difference, *MANUAL*, 77.
- Thorough-, } Saxon Eng. prefixes, 66 (II. 57).
- Through-, }
- Thorp, a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).
- Thral, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).
- Thymy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).
- Tide, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 72).
- Tiguous, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 91 (II. 137). See also *Tact*.
- Tingent, }
- Tion, a common termination, 33 (I. 41); and 58 (II. 36, "Of words ending," &c., twelfth line from the top of page 58).
- To, classed as one of the prepositions, lii. (No. 6):—Its true grammatical character when the prefix of a verb infinitive, 64 (II. 48); and 186 (the foot-note).
- Tome, } Greco-Lat. Eng. suffixes, 96 (II. 147); and 100 (II. 162).
- Tomy, }
- Ton, a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).
- Tort, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 91 (II. 138).
- Tract, }

Trans-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).

Transposition of the parts of sentences, examples of, **MANUAL**, 122.

-Tray, a Norman Eng. prefix of different meanings, 71 (II. 73); and 91 (II. 138).

Tri-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 77 (II. 83).

-Tribute, a Latin Eng. suffix, 91 (II. 138).

Trochee, the foot in verse so called, 253, 254 (IV. 17, 18).

-Trobe, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 100 (II. 162).

-Trophy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).

-Trude, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 91 (II. 138).

-Trusion, }

-Type, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 100 (II. 162).

Typo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 83 (II. 95).

U, its alphabetical sound, 5 (I. 17):—Its other sounds, 6 (I. 19):—Exercise in the orthography of its sounds, **MANUAL**, 32, 33, 34 (at the bottom of each respective page):—Orthographical and etymological peculiarities of, 53 (II. 23).

Ultra-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 72 (II. 74).

-Um, a termination in Latin English words, 57 (II. 35); and in modern chemistry, 100 (II. 163).

Un-, a Saxon prefix of various effect on the words it is joined to, and variously met by prefixes from other sources, 66 (II. 61).

Unapplied, *see* Active.

Under-, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 66 (II. 58).

Understood, a term in grammar properly applied only to the absence of a word when it is present to the mind as a part of the construction:—Its abuse in explaining various forms of construction no longer capable of such supposition, xxxvii. ("\* \* Fathom and feet," &c., seventeen lines from the bottom of the page); 146 (II. 266); 155 (II. 283); 160 (II. 290); 181 (III. 53); 195 (III. 76, "a preposition," &c., fourth line from the bottom of the page, 195); 209 (III. 93, "Nor is the difficulty," &c., eighteen lines from the bottom of the page, 209); 214 (III. 103, "It cannot, however," &c., last two lines of the page 214 above the foot-note); and 218 (III. 115).

Uni-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 76 (II. 81).

Union of words, *see* Synepy, and Syntax.

Up-, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 66 (II. 59).

-Urgy, a Greco-Lat. Eng. suffix, 96 (II. 147).

V, its sound, 3 (I. 9):—Exercise in the orthography of its sound, **MANUAL**, 41:—Orthographical peculiarities of, 62 (II. 42).

Variety, a quality which, amid fundamental but hidden uniformity, is the great charm of rhythm in language, 259 (IV. 25-27).

-Velop, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).



-Vene, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 91 (II. 139).  
 -Vent, }

Verb, explained for young learners, viii-x.; *see also* MANUAL, page 3, Answers to additional questions:—Examples of verbs conjugated, first, the auxiliary verbs, x.-xiv.; then the verb *To be* xiv.-xvi.; thirdly, the verb principal *To take*, xvii.;—How a verb enters into construction, first, as a real verb, xxx.; secondly, in its shape of infinitive, xxxi.; thirdly, in its shape of participle imperfect or perfect, xxxi., xxxii.:—Table of verbs irregular, xlv. (No. 3):—The grammatical verb, how evolved from the natural verb, and subsequently, how distinguishable from the logical verb or completed sentence, 37 (II. 2, 3); and 43 (II. 11):—Inflections to which a verb is liable in English, 105 (II. 168):—Verbs further defined and classed—viz., logical and grammatical verb, 119 (II. 217);—true grammatical character of the verb infinitive, 119 (II. 218);—the meaning of a verb is not essential to it as a mere grammatical element, 119 (II. 219);—explanation of the terms *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*, as applied in grammar to verbs, 119 (II. 220-226);—of the phrase *active unapplied*, 121 (II. 27);—of the division into regular and irregular, 121 (II. 228):—Mood and Tense, Person and Number, of a verb, 121 (II. 229-232):—Participles of a verb, 123 (II. 233, 234):—The verbs irregular considered in classes, 124 (II. 235-250): *see*, for the heads of these classes, Synopsis, at page 274):—Doctrine and practice of conjugation with respect to English verbs, 134 (II. 251-269):—Syntax of the verb—as regards the nominative case, 164 (III. 4, 5);—as regards another verb, 171 (III. 34, 35);—as regards it when governed in the subjunctive, 173 (III. 36);—when in the infinitive, 174 (III. 37, 38);—and when in its shape of participle, 174 (III. 39-43):—Dividual verb an ultimate or individual element of the sentence it helps to construct, 194 (III. 73):—Instances of difficulty in making the verb agree with its nominative,—first when the nominative has such a form as “A, with B, and C,” 198 (III. 82); or such a form as “To profess regard and to act differently,” 198 (II. 83); or other form in which the phrase is, in grammar, a singular, but in logic a plural, or the reverse, 199 (III. 84-87); especially as regards what are called nouns of multitude, 205 (III. 88); and nominatives of the following form, “That warm climates should,” &c., 206 (III. 88):—Exercises on the concord of nominative and verb, MANUAL, 59-67.

Verse, strict meaning of the word, 263 (IV. 29):—Structure of, in English, 252 (IV. 14-27).

-Verse, }  
 -Version, }  
 -Vert, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 92 (II. 139).  
 -Vest, }  
 -Vex, }

-Vey, a Norman Eng. suffix, *ib.*

Vice-, a Latin Eng. prefix, 79 (II. 88).

-Vict, }  
-Vince, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 92 (II. 140).  
-Vide, }

Vis-, a Norman Eng. prefix, 68 (II. 68).

-Vise, }  
-Vive, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 92 (II. 140).

Vocative, the case so named in Latin grammar, vi.:—The correspondent case in English grammar, **xxix.** (4); and 166 (III. 9).

-Voke, }  
-Volve, }  
-Volution, } Latin Eng. suffixes, 92 (II. 140).  
-Vomous, }  
-Vorous, }

-Vour, a Norman Eng. suffix, *ib.*

Vowel, meaning of, as applied to sounds, 2 (I. 2, 3);—as applied to letters, 4 (I. 15):—Exercises in the orthography of vowels, **MANUAL**, 31–37.

-Voy, a Norman Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 73).; and 92 (II. 139).

W, its power as a consonant, 3 (I. 6);—as a vowel, 5 (I. 15):—Exercise in the orthography of its consonant sound, **MANUAL**, 37;—in its various application as a vowel letter helping to form the digraphs *aw*, *ew*, *ow*, **MANUAL**, 32 (at bottom), 34, 36:—Etymological character of words that begin with it, 50 (II. 15);—and end in it, 53 (II. 24).

-Ward, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69).

-Wark, }  
-Weald, } suffixes in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).

-Ween, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 72).

Weet, an old verb, 129 (II. 244).

Were, its conditional and subjunctive character in certain forms of construction, 144 (II. 262.); and 147 (II. 267).

Where, Whither, the difference between, lii. (end of Table No. 5):—An exercise which includes this difference, **MANUAL**, 77.

Which, a relative pronoun, **xxiii.**; liable to be used interrogatively, *ib.*; and demonstratively, *ib.*; and 170 (III. 24):—Refers, when not used demonstratively, to brute creatures, and to things neuter, 169 (III. 23).

Who, a relative pronoun, variable in person, number, and gender, though for these ends without inflection, but declined for case, vii.:—Liable to be used interrogatively, **xxiii.**:—How it enters into construction, **xxxiii.**:—Properly refers only to persons, 169 (III. 23):—Its possessive form, *whose*, is used adjectively, and may then be applied to things as well as persons, **xxiii.**; and 170 (III. 24).

-Wick, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 70 (II. 70).

Will, *see* Shall, and Shall and Will.

-Wise, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 69).

Wit, an old verb, 129 (II. 244).

With-, a Saxon Eng. prefix, 66 (II. 60).

With, a separable prefix or preposition, 153 (II. 279).

-Wold, a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).

Word, how and when a part of speech, 38 (II. 3):—A Saxon Eng. suffix, 69 (II. 70).

-Wort, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 72).

-Worth, a suffix in English names of places, 70 (II. 71).

Wot, an old verb, 129 (II. 244).

Would, *see* Shall, and Should.

-Wright, a Saxon Eng. suffix, 71 (II. 72).

X, a single mark for two sounds, 5 (I. 17):—Is liable to take the kindred vocal sounds, 11 (I. 19, fifth line from the top of the page):  
—The letters *ct* may take its place in *reflexion*, &c., 22 (I. 33):—  
Etymological character of words that begin, 50 (II. 17); and that terminate in it, 62 (II. 43).

Y, its power as a consonant, 3 (I. 6);—as a vowel, 5 (I. 15):—Exercise in the orthography of its consonant sound, MANUAL, 38;—in its various applications as a vowel letter, helping to form the diagraphs *ay*, *ey*, *oy*, *uy*, MANUAL, 31, 32, 34:—Etymological character of words in which it occurs not initial or final, 50 (II. 17); and also of words that end in it, 53 (II. 25).

-Y, an obsolete Saxon Eng. prefix, 63 (II. 46).

Yes, its true character as a part of speech, 149 (II. 271).

Z, its sound, 3 (I. 7):—Exercise in the various orthography of its sound, MANUAL, 38:—Words that terminate in it, 62 (II. 44).

Zoo-, a Greco-Lat. Eng. prefix, 82 (II. 94).

## CONCLUSION.

THE previous Index, which places before the learner the knowledge he has acquired, or has to acquire, in the right construction of sentences, guiding him to the places whence he may supply, or correct, or revive his knowledge, completes what was to be offered for his assistance in GRAMMAR. But he has been continually admonished, that there are two arts theoretically distinct from grammar, yet practically going along with it; and these yet remain for study and practice. The fear is, that in these higher arts, he may continue to work mechanically; that he may expend his efforts in servile imitation,—in forming sentences after certain patterns,—in providing predicates for subjects, and subjects for predicates,—in filling up outlines with adjuncts and circumstances,—and other labours of a like servile kind. Any such course as this must repress the natural powers of thought and language, instead of drawing them forth, and giving them proper exercise. A pupil must not be kept in leading-strings when he ought to walk alone. The truth is, that if he inherits from nature a more than moderate degree of intelligence and taste, and he should be so placed in life that these powers must be exercised in the performance of ordinary duties, he will become an able rhetorician and logician without any aid from formal instruction, though such instruction was indispensable to make him a grammarian. Still, even if so favoured by nature and by circumstances, the knowledge of what rhetoric and what grammar is, cannot but give him a firmer grasp of the means supplied by these arts, and a surer use of them to their appropriate effects. And to a pupil less favoured by nature and circumstances, some further aid than grammar affords, cannot but be useful, if

it avoids the mode of instruction to which allusion has just been made, and the heaping into one volume or system, things which in their nature are distinct.

We presume, then, that a **MANUAL OF RHETORIC**, with Exercises on Style in writing and speaking,—exercises professedly transcending those which proposed nothing more than correctness of grammatical construction : and a **MANUAL OF LOGIC**, with Exercises in laying down definitions and propositions ; in stating premises, and appending their necessary conclusions ; in distributing a subject into parts, and collecting them again ; in everything by which clearness is preserved in the development of knowledge,—cannot, if in any degree adequately executed, be unsuitable sequels to the **MANUAL OF GRAMMAR** now completed.

---

100

101

102

103

104

105

106

107

108

109

110

111

112

113

114

115

116

117

118

119

120

121

122

123

124

125

126

127

128

129

130

131

132

133

134

135

136

137

138

139

140

141

142

143

144

145

146

147

148







